

МИНИСТЕРСТВО ЗДРАВООХРАНЕНИЯ РЕСПУБЛИКИ БЕЛАРУСЬ
БЕЛОРУССКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ МЕДИЦИНСКИЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ
КАФЕДРА ЛАТИНСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

А. З. ЦИСЫК, Е. Л. КУЗНЕЦОВА

ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

Т

Л

А

Т

Рекомендовано Учебно-методическим объединением по высшему медицинскому, фармацевтическому образованию в качестве учебно-методического пособия для студентов учреждений высшего образования, обучающихся по специальности 1-79 01 07 «Стоматология»

LANGUAGE



Минск БГМУ 2018

Лат я73
Ц73

Рецензенты: доц. каф. иностранных языков Гомельского государственного медицинского университета С. А. Лин; каф. классической филологии Белорусского государственного университета

Цисык, А. З.

Ц73 Латинский язык = The Latin Language : учебно-методическое пособие / А. З. Цисык, Е. Л. Кузнецова. – Минск : БГМУ, 2018. – 156 с.

ISBN 978-985-21-0159-2.

Состоит из фонетического раздела и трех основных разделов учебного материала — анатомического, фармацевтического и клинического. Каждый раздел содержит теоретическую и практическую части, латинско-английский и английско-латинский словарь.

Предназначено для иностранных студентов медицинского факультета иностранных учащихся по специальности «Стоматология», изучающих дисциплину «Латинский язык» на английском языке.

УДК 811.124(075.8)-054.6
ББК 81.2Лат я73

ISBN 978-985-21-0159-2

© Цисык А. З., Кузнецова Е. Л., 2018
© УО «Белорусский государственный
медицинский университет», 2018

PREFACE

This manual is meant for English-speaking students studying at the Faculties of Dentistry at medical universities of the Republic of Belarus. Its structure corresponds to the syllabus presented in the State Educational Standard Plan for the subject «The Latin Language» taught in the medical universities at the Faculties of Dentistry. The manual has been composed in accordance with generally accepted patterns expressed in well-known manuals and textbooks of Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology.

The manual is divided into four parts — phonetics, the anatomical part with the main grammar rules, the pharmaceutical part and the clinical one.

Every lesson, as it is generally known, has a uniform structure: checking the home task (orally and in writing), some explanation of new topic, students' work with exercises. The manual contains all necessary components for this work — grammar and terminological material, as well as exercises. In the latter, words are given in alphabetical order, and every lesson is provided with Latin-English and English-Latin glossaries. Such a distribution of educational material should help students in their work with exercises.

According to high school norms of studying linguistic subjects, students are to learn 30–40 new words at every lesson, although this word memorizing can be managed naturally only due to strenuous efforts to do the homework. But then, this work is constantly facilitated by lexical affinity of equivalent words in Latin and English.

The main attention is paid to the anatomical and clinical terms, as namely these terms are and will be mainly needed in daily medical practice of foreign students. That's why the pharmaceutical part of the manual is presented quite concisely. As to clinical terms, on the basis of well-known English medical dictionaries we sought to give the scientific definition of each terminological unit. Such an introduction into professional terminology juggling by the students' reaction has always been of great interest to them.

The subject «Medical Latin» is mastered and controlled chiefly in written form. So both proper spelling and grammar arrangement are of great value as spoken Latin is very simple. That's why control tests at every lesson as well as summing up are performed only in written form.

The students should bear in mind, that only systematic work on the topic and vocabulary of every lesson on their own can result in success.

INTRODUCTION INTO THE SUBJECT

The subject you are going to study is the Latin Language. To some point, this name is relative, because nowadays there are no people speaking Latin. From the school course of world history you can remember, that many centuries ago, where nowadays Italy is, there was the Roman Empire. The Roman state which included many lands and people existed till 476 A.D. And initially, Rome was a small town, founded by an Italian tribe in 753 B.C. and Latin was its native language. Gradually, century after century, Rome became the most powerful state of the Mediterranean and Latin was widespread and acknowledged.

An event of tremendous historical importance for both Rome and the future of European culture was the Roman conquest of Greece, the motherland of European culture and science. The Greek physician Hippocrates is namely considered to be the founder of European scientific medicine. Hippocrates and other Greek physicians made a great contribution into the development of medicine, that's why Greek medicine was extremely popular and prestigious among the population of the Mediterranean area. For this reason, Greek medical terms were borrowed into Latin and came into use in different countries. So originally the European medical terminology was formed on the basis of Greek and Latin words.

In the new history of Europe, beginning with the Roman state's collapse, the Latin language was used for 1000 years as the language of state establishments, Catholic religion, education and science, especially at universities founded in the 12-th century. Every university would have a medical faculty. Diplomas and theses as well as the process of education itself were in Latin. As to medicine, Latin became the international professional language of physicians. Medical terms rooting from Latin and Greek are presented in any European language as borrowings. What's more, there exist lists of biological and medical terms, forming the so-called Nomenclatures, approved at the International Congresses of scientists – anatomical, histological, microbiological etc. Latin terms of those nomenclatures are used in education and scientific literature. That's why future doctors must study fundamentals of international medical terminology, based on Latin grammar and Latin and Greek word building elements (roots, stems and affixes).

Among modern European languages English, and, particularly, medical English, contains a great number of Latin and Latinized Greek words. It becomes evident when comparing medical glossaries of Latin and English. To prove this compare some medical terms in Latin and English.

Latin anatomical terms	English equivalents
abdomen	abdomen
canalis	canal
cardiacus	cardiac
cavitas	cavity
lobus	lobe
longus	long
nasalis	nasal
tonsilla	tonsil

Latin pharmaceutical terms	English equivalents
Acidum aceticum	acetic acid
aether	ether
cortex	cortex
dilutus	diluted
Oleum Eucalypti	eucalyptus oil
herba	herb
pilula	pill
tinctura	tincture

Latin clinical terms	English equivalents	Meaning
allergicus	allergic	caused by or affected with allergy
aneurysma	aneurysm	a localized dilatation of the walls of a blood vessel, usually an artery
cancerophobia	cancerophobia	fear of cancer
cholecystogramma	cholecystogram	result of gall bladder X-ray examination
gnathoschisis	gnathoschisis	a congenital fissure in the maxilla
granuloma	granuloma	a tumor composed of granulation tissue
odontalgia	odontalgia	a painful condition affecting a tooth, tooth-ache
stomatomycosis	stomatomycosis	any morbid condition of the mouth which is caused by a morbid fungus

As we see, in clinical terminology using Latin terms is particularly preferable, because one Latin word can change the whole group of English words, expressing some pathological phenomenon.

The proximity of medical terms in Latin and English can be explained very simply: it is well known, that English medical terminology developed from Medieval Latin terminology, which had absorbed ancient Latin and Greek medical lexical units. Both Latin and ancient Greek is an inexhaustible source for a new term building, and this process keep on going. Everybody striving to become a doctor among them stomatologist has to master Latin and fundamentals of international medical terminology.

The course of Latin at the Medical University you are going to study consists of 3 main parts, which correspond to the main groups of medical terminolo-

gy: anatomical (and partly histological), pharmaceutical and clinical ones. This material is learned in the course of a academic term (semester); each lesson is once a week. Each new lesson includes your teacher's explanation of the topic of the lesson, but the main bulk of work for you is your home task. A specific feature of studying is written control of checking home task preparation at every lesson. Besides this regular test control, 3 written tests (for 90 minutes) are provided. The purpose of these tests is to control the knowledge of the entire material of each part of the course. There exist uniform (for all groups and teachers) rules of the control assessment and you will be acquainted with them. So, at every lesson, you will first work orally, checking the home task with your teacher, and then your knowledge will be controlled in written form (while books and notebooks are closed). The principal way to this knowledge is your own persistent work with your textbook memorizing Latin words and rules of its grammar. And, without doubt, every student can succeed in learning Latin and fundamentals of medical terminology, if his or her efforts are steady and diligent.

Part I
PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION

LESSON 1

**ALPHABET IN LATIN. THE PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS, CONSONANTS
AND LETTER COMBINATIONS. ACCENT RULES**

The Latin alphabet includes 25 letters.

Let- ters	Names	Latin pronunciation	Latin examples and their transcription	English equivalents
A a	a [Λ]	[a]	vas [vΛs]	vessel
B b	be [be]	[b]	bulbus [bú:lbus]	bulb
C c	tse [tse]	[ts] [k]	coccyx [kó:ktsiks]	coccyx, coccygeal bone
D d	de [de]	[d]	dens [dens]	tooth
E e	e [e]	[e]	vertebra [vé:rtebrΛ]	vertebra
F f	ef [ef]	[f]	frontalis [frontá:lis]	frontal
G g	ge [ge]	[g]	genu [gé:nu]	knee
H h	ha [hΛ]	[h] like English heart, here	hepar [hé:pAr]	liver
I i	i [i]	[i]	incisura [incizú:rΛ]	incisure
J j	yot [yot]	[j] like English yes, you	jugularis [jugulá:ris]	jugular
K k	ka [kΛ]	[k]	skeleton [ské:leton]	skeleton
L l	el [el]	[l] as in English life, love	cellula [tsé:llulΛ]	cell
M m	em [em]	[m]	mors [mors]	death
N n	en [en]	[n]	nodus [nó:du:s]	node
O o	o [o]	[o]	coronarius [coroná:rius]	coronary
P p	pe [pe]	[p]	palpebra [pá:lpebrΛ]	eyelid
Q q	ku [ku]	[kv] together with vowel u and vowel a , e, i, o, u after u	Quercus [kvé:rkus] quartus [kvá:rtus]	oak fourth
R r	er [er]	[r]	renalis [rená:lis]	renal
S s	es [es]	[s] [z]	sinus [sí:nus] incisura [intsizú:rΛ]	sinus, hollow incisure
T t	te [te]	[t] [ts]	tibia [tí:biΛ] articulatio [Artiku- lá:tsio]	tibia, shine-bone articulation, joint
U u	u [u]	[u]	succus [sú:kkus]	juice
V v	ve [ve]	[v]	valva [vá:lvΛ]	valve
X x	iks [iks]	[ks]	dexter [dé:kster]	right, right-hand
Y y	ipsilon [ípsilon]	[i]	gyrus [gí:rus]	gyrus, convolution
Z z	zeta [zétΛ]	[z]	zygomaticus [zigomá:tikus]	zygomatic

The last two letters, borrowed by Romans from Greek alphabet, are used, as a rule, in the words of Greek origin.

Six letters of the alphabet (a, e, i, o, u, y) correspond to vowels and nineteen (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z) denote consonants.

Vowels in Latin, except «y», sound practically the same, as the sounds of their names in the alphabet (see above). So, the letter «a» sounds [a], the letter «e» — sounds [e] and so on. One may add that the stressed vowel corresponds in pronunciation to a long one in English, compare:

cavitas [cá:vitʌs] — cavity
apertura [ʌpértú:rʌ] — aperture, opening
venosus [venó:zus] — venous
tonsilla [tonsí:lʌ] — tonsil.

The letter «y» (ípsilon) sounds as the Latin letter «i» (that's why the Frenchman call y «igrek», i. e. «the Greek «i»):

tympanum [tí:mpʌnum] — drum.

All the above given examples also indicate, that Latin vowels don't practically change their sound quality in different syllables. But the vowel «i» placed before the vowels «a», «e», «o», «u» when making a common syllable with them, changes its sound characteristics: now it sounds similar to the English vowel «y» in the yard, yours, yourself, youthful, let's compare:

maialis [mʌjá:lis] — referring to May
ieiunum [jejú:num] — jejunum
major [má:jor] — greater.

As in such cases the letter «i» sounds different compared to the vowel «i», the scientists in the XVI century decided to introduce a new letter «j» into the Latin alphabet, so as to substitute the vowel «i»: majalis, jejunum, major and so on. It is common to use the letter «j» in medical and biological terms. Let's, however, note that in the terms of the Greek origin the vowel «i» never makes a syllable with the subsequent vowels «a», «e», «o», «u» and therefore the letter j cannot be used:

iater [iá:ter] physician, commonly geriater, paediatier, psychiater, phthisiater and so on — these terms will be discussed in the clinical part of our course. We can also mention the noun Iodum [ió:dum] — iodine (Latin names of chemical elements are to be written with capital letters).

s

Two vowels following each other can form the so-called diphthong that is pronounced as a combination of two vowels pronounced in one syllable.

So **au** [au] is pronounced as in the English words down, sound, south, compound and so on:

auris [áuris] — ear, caudalis [kaudá:lis] — caudal, trauma [tráuma] — injury, wound.

Eu [eu] has no analogue in English, so its pronunciation must be learnt by the spelling memorizing. So, we have to pronounce this vowels combination as one syllable when stressing a little its first part [éu], for example:

pneumonia [pneumonía] — pneumonia

Eucalyptus [eukalíptus] — eucalyptus.

However, you should pay attention to the letter combination «**eu**» at the end of words, where it doesn't make a diphthong and each vowel is pronounced separately:

sigmoideus [sigmoí:deus] — sigmoid

corpus luteum [kó:rpus lú:teum] — corpus luteum (yellow body).

Two vowels can also form a digraph, which sounds like the Latin vowel «**e**»:

ae — [e] — costae [kó:ste] — ribs

oe — [e] — oedema [edé:m] — swelling.

If each vowel in such digraphs is to be pronounced separately, two dots are placed over the letter «**e**»:

aër [á:er] — air, Aloë (names of medical plants are to be written in Latin with the capital letter) [á:loe] — aloe.

Consonants **b, d, f, h, k, m, n, p, q, s, t, v, x** are similar in pronouncing to English. The difference is that consonants **p, t, k** are not aspirated, as in English. Pronunciation of the rest consonants is to be explained.

The letter **Cc** before the vowels «**e**», «**i**», «**y**» and digraphs «**ae**», «**oe**» is pronounced as [ts], but before the vowels «**a**», «**o**», «**u**» and consonants (except **h**) is pronounced as [k]:

cervicalis [tserviká:lis] — cervical

caecum [tsé:kum] — caecum

coccyx [kó:ktsiks] — coccyx, cockerel bone.

The letter **Gg** is always pronounced like [g] in English **get, glass, disguise**:

gaster [gá:ster] — stomach

genu [gé:nu] — knee

vagina [vʌgí:n] — vagina.

The letter **Hh** is pronounced approximately as the letter «**h**» in English:

homo [hó:mo] — man

hyoideus [hioí:deus] — sublingual.

The letter **Ll** is pronounced in someway softer than in English and is palatalized both before vowels and consonants (as in the pronunciation of such English words as **look** and **live**):

albus [á:lbus] — white

cellula [tsé:llulʌ] — cell

palatinus [pʌlʌtínus] — palatine

pyloricus [piló:rikus] — pyloric.

The letter **Rr** in Latin is pronounced always clearly and distinctly not as the English **Rr** [a:]

dexter [dé:xter] — right

posterior [posté:rior] — back

renalis [rená:lis] — renal.

The letter **Ss** between two vowels is pronounced like [z], in other cases — as [s]:

basis [bá:zis] — base

sinus [sí:nus] — sinus, hollow.

The letter **Tt** is commonly pronounced as [t] without aspiration: tinctura [tinktú:rʌ] — tincture. But in such a letter combination, where «i» follows «t» plus some other vowel, «t» is pronounced as [ts]:

articulatio [artikulá:tsio] — joint

protuberantia [protuberá:ntsia] — protuberance

There is, however, an exception from this last rule: if before the combination ti + vowel the consonants «s» or «x» are placed, then the pronunciation of **ti** is [ti]:

digestio [digé:stio] — digestion

ostium [ó:stium] — orifice

The letter **Zz** is pronounced as [z]:

zona [zó:nʌ] — zone

horizontalis [horizontá:lis] — horizontal.

But in two cases we pronounce this letter as [ts]: influenza [influé:ntsʌ] — grippus, influenza and Zincum [tsí:nkum] — zink.

Two consonants can form a digraph, which is pronounced as a consonant:

ch is pronounced as [kh]:

charta [khá:rtʌ] — paper

chorda [khó:rdʌ] — cord

ph is pronounced as [f]:

lymphaticus [limfá:ticus] — lymphatic

pharynx [fá:rinks] — pharynx

rh is pronounced as [r]:

rhinorrhagia [rinoragí:a] — rhinorrhagia (nasal bleeding)

rhomboideus [romboí:deus] — rhomboid

th is pronounced as [t]:

thorax [tó:raks] — chest

labyrinthus [lʌbirí:ntus] — labyrinth.

The combination of three consonants **sch** is pronounced as [skh]:

schema [skhé:mʌ] — scheme

ischiadicus [iskhiá:dikus] — sciatic.

The letter combination **ngu** is pronounced as [ngv], if the vowel «u» is followed by one of the vowels «a», «e», «i», «u»:

lingua [li:ngvʌ] — tongue, language

unguentum [ungvé:ntum] — ointment

unguis [ú:ngvis] — nail

But if a consonant follows «**u**», then **ngu** is pronounced as [ngu]:

angulus [á:ngulus] — angle

lingula [lí:ngulΛ] — lingula, little tongue.

The letter combination **qu** with a following vowel (**a, e, i, o, u**) is pronounced as [kv] with a subsequent vowel:

squamosus [skvamó:zus] — squamosal

aqueductus [akvedú:ktus] — aqueduct

Quercus [kvé:rkus] — oak.

If a word consists of two syllables, there is always only one stress: the first syllable is stressed:

cós-ta, lá-rynx, nér-vus.

In polysyllabic words consisting of three and more syllables, the second or third syllables from the end of the word can be stressed. The stress depends on the length or brevity of the second word end syllable: if it is long, it is stressed, if it is short, it cannot be stressed and then the third word end syllable is stressed.

The length and brevity of the second syllable and particularly in textbooks are usually marked by special signs: a short line is placed over the vowel if it is long, and a little arch — if it is short, compare:

ā — ā̄, ē — ē̄, ī — ī̄, ō — ō̄, ū — ū̄, ŷ — ŷ̄.

So, if we find such words as forāmen, incisūra, hepatītis etc. in the dictionary, we can instantly determine that such words have an accent on the second syllable from the end.

If in the dictionary we see such words as lamīna, encephālon, thoracīcus etc., we understand that the third syllable from the end must be stressed: lámīna, encéphālon, thorácīcus.

Now, we should ask a crucial question: do we have to consult the dictionary about the quality of the second end syllable in every case or not? Fortunately, there exist some rules helping us to determine at once the length or brevity of the second end syllable, or more simply, of the second end vowel. First of all, the suffixes containing vowels which are long or short by nature, calling the suffixes accordingly «long» or «short», can give us guidance about the length or brevity of the second end vowel.

Before listing the suffixes, one must notice, that part of these suffixes is always long or short in all kinds of terminology — anatomical, pharmaceutical, clinical. As we are going to begin with anatomical terminology and continue

studying it during the first semester, it would be proper to begin with the suffixes in anatomical terms.

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions and their translation
-āl-	dentālis horizontālis	dental horizontal	encephālon (brain)
-ār-	articulāris mandibulāris	auricular mandibular	
-āt-	caudātus meātus	caudate passage	
-īn-	palatīnus vagīna	palatine vagina, sheath	lamīna (lamine), femīna (women), retīna (retina), dens serotīnus (wisdom tooth), nervus trigemīnus (trigeminal nerve), termīnus (term)
-īv-	gingīva dens incisīvus	gingiva, gum incisor (tooth)	
-ōs-	aponeurōsis petrōsus	aponeurosis petrosal	
-ūr-	incisūra sutūra	incisure, slit or notch suture, line of junction	

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions and their translation
-iāc-	cardiācus coeliācus	cardiac coeliac	
-īc-	gastrīcus tunīca	gastric tunic, coat	vesīca (bladder)
-ōl-	alveōlus foveōla	alveolus, satchet (tooth) foveola	
-ūl-	clavicūla mandibūla	clavicle mandible	

As mentioned above, some suffixes can always be long or short in all parts of medical terminology, compare:

Suffix	Anatomical terms	Pharmaceutical terms	Clinical terms
-āt-	musculū levātor (levator (muscle))	Aqua destillāta (distilled water)	Caries exacerbāta (caries ex- acerbated)
Suffix	Anatomical terms	Pharmaceutical terms	Clinical terms
-ōs-	aponeurōsis (aponeurosis)	spirituōsus (spirituous)	erythrocytōsis (erythrocyto- sis, increased account of red blood cells in the blood)
-ūr-	junctūra (junction, juncture)	tinctūra (tincture)	fractūra (fracture)
-ūl-	angūlus (angle)	Betūla (birch)	furuncūlus (furuncle, boil)

isn't a part of a long or a short suffix

In many words the second vowel from the word end is placed before a consonant, but this vowel is not a part of a common long or short suffix. In such cases we can determine its length or brevity controlling those peculiarities of the given word in the textbook vocabulary, compare:

forāmen (opening), orbīta (eye-socket), skelēton (skeleton), suprēmus (highest), tuberositas (tuberosity), urēter (ureter) and so on.

In some cases we can determine the syllable length or brevity with the help of certain rules.

1. The syllable is long, when its vowel is placed before two or more consonants:

ligamēntum (ligament) maxīlla (maxilla, upper jaw) sinīster (left)

But, when the vowel is short by nature (it is shown in the dictionary) and it is placed before two consonants, first of which being **b, c, d, g, p, t** and the second is **l** or **r**, this short vowel is pronounced short:

vertēbra (vertebra), cerēbrum (cerebrum), os triquētrum (triquetrum bone), multīplex (multiple). And when this vowel is long by nature, our rule is valid:

cicātrix (cicatrix, scar), psychiātri (psychiatrists), salūbris (curative).

2. The syllable is long, when it includes the diphthongs **au, eu** or digraphs **ae, oe**: amoéba (ameba), diaéta (diet), Althaéa (althea).

3. The syllable is long, when its vowel is placed before the consonants **x** or **z**: reflēxus (reflex), Orīza (rise).

1. The syllable is short, when its vowel is placed before another vowel:

linēa (line), superīor (higher, upper)

cornūa (horns), Aluminīum (aluminium).

There are, however, two points of exceptions from this rule:

1) in some words of Greek origin the last but one vowel was formed from the digraph **ae**, that's why it keeps the length of the syllable:

coccygaeus → coccygēus

peritoneum → peritonēum.

You have to memorize these exceptions:

perinēum (perineum, fork), peritonēum (peritoneum), trachēa (trachea), anconēus (anconeus (muscle)), coccygēus (coccygeal), esophagēus (esophageal), glutēus (gluteal), laryngēus (laryngeal), meningēus (meningeal), peronēus (peroneal, fibular), pharyngēus (pharyngeal).

2) in clinical terms with the ending **-ia** their vowel «**i**» and syllable with it are stressed:

dyskinesía (dyskinesia, disturbance of movement), otoscopía (otoscopy, internal examination of the ear).

Some peculiarities of this exception will be discussed in the clinical part of our course.

2. The syllable is short, when its vowel is placed before digraphs **ch, ph, rh, th:**

ductus choledōchus (bile duct), odontolīthus (odontolith, calculus of the teeth)

1. Read the following words paying special attention to the vowel pronunciation:

forámen (opening), ligaméntum (ligament), dúctus (duct), interglobuláris (interglobular), longitudinális (longitudinal), massetéricus (masticatory, chewing), pylóricus (pyloric), synoviális (synovial), tympánicus (tympanic), sínister (left), zygomáticus (zygomatic).

2. Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letter c:

cáput (head), cervicális (cervical), cérebrum (brain), cútis (skin), Ácidum acéticum (acetic acid), síccus (dry), fácies (face, surface), coccygéus (coccygeal), coerúleus (blue), caécum (caecum), búccae (cheeks), carcinóma (cancer), sáccus lacrimális (lacrimal sac).

3. Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letters g and q:

nervus hypoglóssus (hypoglossal nerve), gánglion pterygopalatínium (pterygopalatine ganglion), rámi gingiváles (gingival branches), gánglion geniculátum (geniculate ganglion), gýrus anguláris (angular gyrus), húmor aquósus (aqueous humor), aquedúctus vestibuli (vestibular aqueduct), cósta quinta (fifth rib), márgo squamósus (squamosal border).

4. Read correctly the following words, paying special attention to the consonants j, s and t:

ála májor (major wing), flexúra duodenojejunális (duodenojejunal flexure), júga alveolária (alveolar yokes), articulátio compósita (complex joint), óstium atrioventriculáre dextrum (right atrioventricular orifice), incisúra juguláris (jugular notch), segméntum basále antérius (anterior basal segment), bási óssis sácri (base of sacrum), míxtio pro potióne (mixture for drinking).

5. Read correctly the following words paying attention to combinations of vowels:

cóstae spúriae (false ribs), forámen caécum línguae (caecum foramen of tongue), Óleum Eucalýpti (eucalyptus oil), oedéma larýngis (edema of larynx), nervus auriculáris (auricular nerve), aponeurósis línguae (lingual aponeurosis), céllulae haematopoëticae (haematogenic cells), glándulae oesophagéae (oesophageal glands), pneumonía mígrans (migratory pneumonia).

6. Read attentively the following words with vowel and consonant combinations:

nervus ischiadicus (sciatic nerve), Strophanthinum (strophanthin), Synthomycinum (synthomycin), febris haemorrhagica (haemorrhagic fever), raphe pharyngis (pharyngeal raphe), asthma bronchiale (bronchial asthma), vertebrae thoracicae (thoracic vertebrae), unguentum ophthalmicum (ophthalmic ointment), labyrinthus ethmoidalis (ethmoidal labyrinth), Methylenum coeruleum (blue methylene), rhizoma Glycyrrhizae (rhizome of licorice), Schizandra chinensis (chinense magnolia vine), sectiones hypothalami (sections of hypothalamus), ductus choledochus (common bile duct), truncus brachiocephalicus (brachiocephalic trunk), distantia trochanterica (trochanteric distance), hemisphaerium cerebelli (hemisphere of cerebellum), tuberculum pharyngeum (pharyngeal tubercle), vena saphena (saphenous vein), cirrhosis hepatis (biliary cirrhosis), typhus abdominalis (abdominal typhus), nephrolithiasis chronica (chronic nephrolithiasis), foetor ex ore seu halitosis (fetid or offensive breath or halitosis).

7. Determine the stress syllable, paying attention to the long and short suffixes:

incisura ethmoidalis (ethmoidal notch), tuberculum jugulare (jugular tubercle), lingua sphenoidalis (sphenoidal lingula), semicanalis tubae auditivae (canal for auditory tube), meatus acusticus externus (external acoustic meatus), lamina perpendiculāris (perpendicular plate), facies palatina (palatine surface), vesica biliaris (gallbladder), glandulae endocrinae (endocrine glands), juncturae cinguli pelvici (joints of pelvic girdle), urethra masculina (male urethra), spina scapulae (spine of scapula), intestinum tenue (small intestine), alveolus dentalis (tooth socket), tunica mucosa linguae (mucous membrane of tongue), arcus dentalis mandibularis (mandibular dental arcade), trigonum submandibulare (submandibular triangle).

8. Determine the stress syllable, paying attention to the natural length or brevity of the last but one vowel:

tuberculum anterius (anterior tubercle), incisurae costales (costal slits), vertebra thoracica (thoracic vertebra), ductus choledochus (bile duct), foramen apicis radialis dentis (apical foramen of the root of the tooth), vesica urinaria (urinary bladder), Oleum Ricini (castor oil), Sirupus Rubi idaei (raspberry syrup), Solutio Iodi spirituosa (iodine spirituous solution), eczema allergicum (allergic eczema), stomatitis chronica (chronic stomatitis), systema conducens cordis (conducting system of heart), apertura thoracis inferior (lower opening of chest), musculus levator fornix (muscle raising fornix), Tinctura Valeriana (tincture of valerian), facies anterior partis petrosae (anterior surface of petrous part), canales palatini minores (lesser palatine canals), systema lymphoideum (lymphoid system).

9. Write down the terms, put the signs of length or brevity over the last but one syllable (using vocabularies if necessary) and determine in writing the accent:

ligamentum popliteum obliquum (oblique popliteal ligament), cartilāgo thyreoidea (thyroid cartilage), bifurcatio tracheae (bifurcation of trachea), musculus anconeus (anconeus muscle), atrium meatus medii (atrium of middle meatus), Extractum Crataegi fluīdum (liquid extract of hawthorn), paralýsis congenita (congenital paralysis), syndrōmum immunodeficientiae acquisitae (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), tuberositas pterygoidea (pterygoid tuberosity), anaemia myelogenā (myelogenous anemia), arteria circumflexa humeri anterior (anterior circumflex humeral artery), orgānum vasculosum laminae terminalis (vascular organ of lamina terminalis), fissura longitudinalis cerēbri (longitudinal cerebral fissure), fasciculus uncinatus cerebelli (uncinate fasciculus of cerebellum), kyphosis thoracica (thoracic kyphosis), linea glutea inferior (inferior gluteal line), syndesmoses cranii (cranial syndesmoses), articulatio sacrococcygea (sacrococcygeal joint), segmentum anterius mediale (anterior medial segment), infundibulum vesicae felleae (infundibulum of gall bladder), muscoli palati mollis et faucium (muscles of soft palate and fauces), papilla duodēni major (major duodenal papilla), ostium atrioventriculare sinistrum (left atrioventricular orifice), membrāna bronchopericardiaca (bronchopericardial membrane), arteria pharyngea ascendens (ascending pharyngeal artery), tuberositas deltoidea (deltoid tuberosity).

Part II ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

LESSON 2 THE STRUCTURE OF LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMS. NOUNS AND THEIR GRAMMAR CATEGORIES

Anatomical terminology naming all parts of the human body is the base of medical terminology. For more than a century the so-called Terminologia Anatomica — The International Anatomical Terminology in Latin which is accepted by anatomists of the world, has existed. Latin is also the base for creating equivalent terms in other languages. The last edition of this International Anatomic Terminology appeared in 1998 and it contains 7428 terms.

The anatomical term is a word or several words used to denote a definite unit or structure of the human body. So Latin anatomical terms may consist of one, two, three, four and more words — up to 8.

One-word terms consist of one noun in Singular or Plural:
cor (heart); fauces (fauces).

Two-word terms may consist of:

1. A noun with an adjective in Singular or Plural:

crista renālis (renal crest); nodi faciāles (facial nodes).

2. Two nouns in Singular or Plural:

corpus vertēbrae (body of vertebra); terminatiōnes nervōrum (nerve terminals).

Three-word terms may consist of:

1. Three nouns:

ala cristae galli (ala of crista galli); lamīna arcus vertēbrae (lamina of vertebral arch).

2. One noun plus two adjectives:

glandūlae salivariae minōres (minor salivary glands); plexus cervicālis posterior (posterior cervical plexus).

3. Two nouns plus one adjective:

arcus anterior atlantis (anterior arch of atlas); tuberositas ossis sacri (sacral tuberosity).

In multiword terms several nouns and adjectives can be presented:

fissūra horizontālis pulmōnis dextri (horizontal fissure of right lung);

processus uncinātus vertēbrae thoracīcae primae (uncinate process of first thoracic vertebra).

The grammar categories in Latin noun are the following:

1. Gender. 2. Number. 3. Case. 4. Declension.

There are three genders in Latin: masculine (masculīnum **m**); feminine (feminīnum **f**); neutral (neutrum **n**).

English nouns, in contrast to Latin, have only a natural gender: nouns denoting males are masculine (boy, man), nouns denoting females are feminine (girl, women) and nouns denoting inanimate are of neutral gender (bone, vessel).

Latin nouns always have only grammar gender, which is determined by the ending, but what is more significant, by gender signs too (m, f, n). These gender signs are given in the dictionaries, where nouns are presented in the so-called word or dictionary form, which we shall discuss later.

As to the number, both English and Latin have two numbers — singular (singulāris) and plural (plurālis). Just like in English, the number of the noun in Latin shows whether we speak about one thing or more than one. Plural indications in English are very simple (endings -s or -es). In Latin, these indications are more numerous and are determined by the gender and declension. Plural endings will be discussed in detail in a special section.

Case as a grammar category is not presented in every language. It is absent, for example, in French, Italian and Spanish. As to English, we can speak about a «common case» and a «possessive case». In contrast to English there are six different forms of noun endings corresponding to each case. Only four case forms of Latin nouns are used in medical terms:

Nominatīvus, Nominative (answers the questions *who, what*)

Genetīvus, Genitive (answers the questions *whose, of what*)

Accusatīvus, Accusative (answers the questions *whom, what*)

Ablatīvus, Ablative (answers the questions *by whom, with what*).

The first two cases (Nominative and Genitive) are mainly used in the medical terminology, the other cases occur more rarely, they are used in anatomical and pharmaceutical terms in combination with prepositions.

It is of vital importance to always remember, that each Latin noun must be learnt in its «Dictionary form». This form consists of three components:

1. The full form of the Nominative Singular.
2. The Genitive Singular ending, indicating the type of declension.
3. Definition of the grammar gender (with the letters m, f, n):

Written form	Oral form	English equivalent of the noun
ala, ae f	ala, alae, feminīnum	wing
nervus, i m	nervus, nervi, masculīnum	nerve
cancer, cri m	cancer, cancri, masculīnum	cancer
ligamentum, i n	ligamentum, ligamenti, neutrum	ligament
Eucalyptus, i f	Eucalyptus, Eucalypti, feminīnum	eucalyptus
corpus, ōris n	corpus, corpōris, neutrum	body
cornu, us n	cornu, cornus, neutrum	horn

Nouns with the ending **-ae** in the Genitive Singular belong **to the 1-st declension**; they are mainly feminine:

ala, ae f — wing crista, ae f — crest vertebra, ae f — vertebra

Nouns having the ending **-i** in the Genitive Singular belong **to the 2-nd declension**.

Nouns of the **masculine gender** can have the ending **-us** in the Nominative (the greatest part) or **-er** (very limited in number):

angulus, i m — angle musculus, i m — muscle nervus, i m — nerve
cancer, cri m — cancer (the full form of Genitive — **cancri**).

Nouns of the **neutral gender** have also two types: nouns with the ending form **-um** (the main part), and nouns with the ending form **-on** (they are of Greek origin), compare:

ligamentum, i n — ligament dorsum, i n — back
encephalon, i n — brain colon, i n — colon, large intestine.

The 3-d declension is the most numerous one. Here are presented the nouns of all genders and with different endings in the Nominative having the ending **-is** in the Genitive. They are commonly divided into two groups.

The first one includes nouns having equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive (so called *parisyllaba*):

basis, basis f (basis, is f) — base
canalis, canalis m (canalis, is m) — canal.

The second and the most numerous part of the nouns have one more syllable in the Genitive compared to the Nominative (so called *imparisyllaba*):

apex, apicis m (the written dictionary form apex, icis m) — apex, top
tuberositas, tuberositatis f (tuberositas, atis f) — tuberosity
foramen, foraminis n (foramen, inis n) — foramen, opening.

If such nouns have only one syllable in the Nominative, then the complete form of the Genitive is:

dens, dentis m — tooth
os, ossis n — bone
pars, partis f — part.

The 4-th declension includes nouns of the masculine and neutral gender, having the ending **-us** in the Genitive:

processus, processus m (processus, us m) — process
ductus, ductus m (ductus, us m) — duct
cornu, cornus n (cornu, us n) — horn.

The 5-th declension includes nouns, having the ending **-ei** in the Genitive:
facies, faciei f (facies, ei f) — face, surface.

Attention! Remember the following:

1. Feminine nouns may occur in the 2-nd and 4-th declensions, masculine ones in the 1-st: oculista, ae m (ophthalmologist), Eucalyptus, i f (eucalyptus), manus us f (hand).

2. Two groups of nouns of the Greek origin retain their particular form:

2.1. Feminine nouns with the ending -e in the Nominative and -es in the Genitive: raphe, es f (a seam on the mild tissue).

2.2. Masculine nouns with the ending -es in the Nominative and -ae in the Genitive: diabētes, ae m (diabetes).

The endings proper to each declension in the Nominative and Genitive are presented in the table below:

Declension	Gender	Ending in the Nom. sing.	Examples in the Nom. sing.	Ending in the Gen. sing.	Examples in the Gen. sing.
I	f	-a	costa	-ae	costae
II	m	-us	sulcus	-i	sulci
	n	-er	cancer		cancri
		-um	ligamentum		ligamenti
		-on	encephalon		encephali
III	m	different	apex	-is	apicis
	f	different	basis		basis
	n	different	foramen		foraminis
IV	m	-us	processus	-us	processus
	n	-u	cornu		cornus
V	f	-es	facies	-ei	faciei

The stem of the noun is essential for declining and word building. It is determined by removing the Genitive ending which indicates the type of the declension:

Dictionary form	Full form of the Genitive	Stem of noun
crista, ae f (rib)	crist-ae	crist-
sulcus, i m (furrow, groove, sulcus)	sulc-i	sulc-
cancer, cri m (cancer)	cancr-i	cancr-
foramen, ĩnis n (opening)	foramĩn-is	foramĩn-
arcus, us m (arch)	arc-us	arc-
facies, ei f (face, surface)	faci-ei	faci-

1. Give in written the dictionary form of the following nouns:

apex, basis, canālis, cancer, cornu, corpus, cranium, dens, encephalon, facies, ganglion, lingua, mandibula, nasus, nervus, organon, os, radix, scapula, sternum, sulcus, tuber, tuberculum, tuberositas.

2. Give in written the dictionary form of the following nouns and define their stem and declension:

abdomen, angle, arch, base, bone, canal, crest, duct, head, horn, ligament, lower jaw, nose, opening, region, root (radix), skin, skull, surface, tongue, tooth, upper jaw.

3. Write down the dictionary form of nouns, translate the terms into English:

apex linguae; angulus faciēi nasi; basis cranii; canālis radīcis dentis; corpus vertēbrae; facies tubercūli costae; incisūra mandibūlae; nervus encephāli; pars faciēi sterni; septum nasi; sulcus sinus; tuber maxillae.

4. Give the dictionary form of each noun, translate the terms into Latin:

abdomen cavity (=cavity of abdomen); arch of aorta; base of mandible; body of upper jaw; canal of dental radix (=canal of radix of tooth); cancer of the skin; cavity of the nose; cervical part (=part of cervix); crest of the rib head (=crest of the head of rib); face bone (=bone of face); head of rib; nerve of the brain; nervous node of the neck; part of the process; region of skull; skin nerve (=nerve of skin); sternal angle (=angle of sternum); surface of knee; apex of the horn; vertebral arch (=arch of vertebra).

I. Latin–English vocabulary

Nouns of the 1st declension

costa, ae f	— rib
incisūra, ae f	— incisure, slit or notch
lingua, ae f	— tongue
mandibūla, ae f	— lower jaw, mandible
maxilla, ae f	— upper jaw, maxilla
vertēbra, ae f	— vertebra

Nouns of the 2nd declension

angulus, i m	— angle
cancer, cri m	— cancer
cranium, i n	— skull
encephālon, i n	— brain
ganglion, i n	— ganglion, nervous node
nasus, i m	— nose
nervus, i m	— nerve
orgānon, i n	— organ
septum, i n	— septum, dividing wall
sternum, i n	— sternum, breast-bone
sulcus, i m	— sulcus, furrow or groove
tubercūlum, i n	— tubercle, small rounded swelling

Nouns of the 3rd declension

apex, ĩcis m	— apex, tip
basis, is f	— base
caput, ĩtis n	— head
canālis, is m	— canal
corpus, ōris n	— body
dens, dentis m	— tooth
os, ossis n	— bone
radix, ĩcis f	— radix, root

regio, ōnis f	— region
tuber, ĕris n	— tuber, large rounded swelling
tuberositas, ātis f	— tuberosity

Nouns of the 4th declension

cornu, us n	— horn, horn-shaped process
processus, us m	— process
sinus, us m	— sinus, hollow curvature or cavity

Nouns of the 5th declension

facies, ĕi f — face, surface

II. English–Latin vocabulary

abdomen	— abdōmen, ĩnis n
aorta	— aorta, ae f
angle	— angŭlus, i m
apex, tip	— apex, ĩcis m
arch	— arcus, us m
base	— basis, is f
body	— corpus, ōris n
bone	— os, ossis n
brain	— cerĕbrum, i n
canal	— canālis, is m
cancer	— cancer, cri m
cavity	— cavitas, ātis f
cervical: see cervix	
cervix	ĭcis f
crest	— crista, ae f
dental: see tooth	
duct	— ductus, us m
ganglion, nervous	
node	— ganglion, i n
face	— facies, ĕi f
head	— caput, ĩtis n
horn	— cornu, us n
knee	— genu, us n
ligament	— ligamentum, i n
lower jaw, mandible	— mandibŭla, ae f
neck	— cervix, ĭcis f
nerve	— nervus, i m
nose	— nasus, i m
opening	— forāmen, ĩnis n
part	— pars, partis f
process	— processus, us m
region	— regio, ōnis f
rib	— costa, ae f
root, radix	— radix, ĭcis f
skin	— cutis, is f
skull	— cranium, i n

surface	— facies, ēi f
sternal: see sternum	
sternum	— sternum, i n
tongue	— lingua, ae f
tooth	— dens, dentis m
upper jaw, maxilla	— maxilla, ae f
vertebra	— vertēbra, ae f
vertebral: see vertebra	

LESSON 3

ADJECTIVES AND THEIR DICTIONARY FORM. ADJECTIVE AND NOUN AGREEMENT

Both in English and Latin the adjective is a word expressing the quality of a thing: long, short, nasal, simple and so on.

But in contrast to English, Latin adjectives have always grammar coordination with their nouns, that is a noun and an adjective must have the same gender, case and number. The adjective follows the noun.

According to their endings all Latin adjectives are divided into two groups.

Adjectives which have three gender endings make up the 1-st group: masculine forms have the ending **-us** or **-er**, feminine — **-a**, neutral — **-um**:

Masculine	Feminine	Neutral
longus (long)	longa	longum
liber (free)	libēra	libērum
dexter (right)	dextra	dextrum

The dictionary form of adjectives includes the full masculine form, endings of the feminine and the neutral ones (when answering, every gender form is pronounced!). All these forms are in the Nominative:

longus, a, um — long	oral form: longus, longa, longum
liber, ēra, ērum — free	oral form: liber, libēra, libērum
dexter, tra, trum — right	oral form: dexter, dextra, dextrum.

In the last two adjectives the endings of the feminine and the neutral forms are enlarged. It is common for the adjectives with the ending **-er** in the masculine form, because it helps us determine, whether the vowel **-e-** in the feminine and the neutral forms is lost or not.

The gender forms of the adjectives of this group have the declension pattern in the nouns of the 1-st and 2-nd declensions: feminine forms are declined like the nouns of the first declension, masculine and neutral forms — like the nouns of the second declension. The stem of these adjectives is determined like that of the nouns:

Gender form	Nominative	Genitive	Declension	Stem
-------------	------------	----------	------------	------

Gender form	Nominative form	Genitive form	Stem
masculine feminine neutral	prominens prominens prominens	prominentis	prominent-
masculine feminine neutral	teres teres teres	terētis	teret-
masculine feminine neutral	par par par	paris	par-
masculine feminine neutral	simplex simplex simplex	simplicis	simplic-

The dictionary form of these adjectives includes the Nominative form and the Genitive ending:

sapiens, entis (oral form: sapiens, sapientis)
 teres, ětis (oral form: teres, terětis)
 par, is (oral form: par, paris)
 simplex, ěcis (oral form: simplex, simplicis).

To agree an adjective and a noun in Latin means to say or to write these parts of speech in the same gender, number and case. To do it you should:

- 1) imagine or write dictionary forms of the noun and adjective;
- 2) correctly determine the gender, number and case of the noun;
- 3) place the noun in the first place of the term;
- 4) choose the correct grammar form of the adjective for this noun and put it in the second place (after the noun).

Let us take, e. g., the following word combinations: 1) sacral vertebra 2) carotid tubercle 3) palatine groove.

First of all, let us write down the dictionary form of every word:

sacral — *sacrālis*, e; vertebra — *vertěbra*, ae f; carotid — *carotĭcus*, a, um; tubercle — *tubercŭlum*, i n; palatine — *palatĭnus*, a, um; groove — *sulcus*, i m.

Now, let us make up the procedure of agreement:

- 1) *vertěbra*: gender — feminine, number — singular, case — Nominative.

So in the dictionary form of adjective we choose the form *sacrālis* and agree it in this way with the noun *vertebra*: *vertěbra sacrālis*.

- 2) *tubercŭlum*: neutral, Singular, Nominative.

That's why we choose the adjective form *caroticum* and make up the term *tubercŭlum carotĭcum*.

- 3) *sulcus*: masculine, Singular, Nominative.

So for this noun we need the adjective form *palatĭnus*. Writing down it after the noun *sulcus* we get as a result the term *sulcus palatĭnus*.

If we have to agree two adjectives with one noun, the order of agreement is the following. The adjective indicating the main space location of the object (*cardiācus*, a, um cardiac; *cervicālis*, e cervical, *gastrĭcus*, a, um gastric and so

on) is placed after the noun: right gastric artery — arteria gastrica dextra, deep lymphatic vessel — vas lymphaticum profundum.

One should be able not only to agree adjectives and nouns in the Nominative, but also make up the Genitive form from this Nominative construction. So, let's make the Genitive forms of the above mentioned Nominative forms:

1) *vertebra sacrālis*: from the dictionary form we already know the Genitive form and write it down: *vertebrae*. Now, we have to determine the Genitive form of *sacrālis*. As we have seen above, this adjective belongs to the third declension, that's why the Genitive form should have the ending *-is*, that is *sacrālis*, which finally makes in the Genitive the word combination *vertebrae sacrālis*.

2) *tuberculum caroticum*: both the noun and the adjective belong to the second declension, that's why they have to receive the ending *-i* in the Genitive form — *tuberculi carotici*.

3) *sulcus palatīnus*: *sulcus*, as it is evident from the dictionary form, belongs to the second declension, the ending *-us* in the adjective *palatinus* tells us that this form belongs to the second declension and so we can determine the Genitive form as *palatīni*. The whole term in Genitive form is *sulci palatīni*.

To form the Comparative degree, it is necessary to find the stem of the positive degree and add the suffix **-ior** for the masculine and feminine forms and **-ius** for the neutral form:

Positive form	Stem	Comparative masculine and feminine form	Comparative neutral form	Translation
longus, a, um (long) simplex, ĩcis (simple)	long- simplic-	longior simplicior	longius simplicius	longer more simple

The full dictionary form of the masculine and the feminine has the ending *-ior*, while the neutral form has *-ius*:

longior, ius (written dictionary form) longior, longius (oral form)
simplicior, ius (written dictionary form) simplicior, simplicius (oral form).

Adjectives in the Comparative degree have the same pattern of declension as nouns of the third declension. Their distinctive feature is the ending **-ōris** in the Genitive:

Nominative form of Comparative	Genitive form of Comparative	Stem
longior (m, f) longius (n)	longiōris	longior-
simplicior simplicius	simpliciōris	simplicior-

The grammar agreement of the Comparative form with nouns follows the common rules:

Positive degree	Comparative degree
m m	m m

processus longus	processus longior
n n	n n
ligamentum longum	ligamentum longius
f f	f f
radix longa	radix longior
n n	n n
ganglion simplex	ganglion simplicius

In anatomical (and histological) terminology only limited forms of adjectives in the Comparative degree are used. First of all, Comparative forms of the adjectives great (large) and little (small) are used:

Positive degree of Latin adjective	English equivalents	Comparative form of Latin adjectives	English anatomical equivalents
magnus, a, um	great, large	maior (major), maius (majus)	greater, larger, major
parvus, a, um	little, small	minor, minus	lesser, smaller, minor

In the forms minor, minus we don't see the full endings -ior, -ius, but that is a distinctive feature of these forms to remember.

In anatomical terminology four adjectives in the Comparative form are also used, although from the point of view of English, not every of such forms express comparison:

Latin masculine and feminine form	Latin neural form	Latin dictionary form	English anatomical equivalents
anterior	anterius	anterior, ius	anterior
posterior	posterius	posterior, ius	posterior
superior	superius	superior, ius	upper, superior
inferior	inferius	inferior, ius	lower, inferior

Thus, only 6 adjectives in the form of Comparative degree are used in Latin anatomical terminology:

Latin dictionary form	Genitive form	Stem
anterior, ius	anteriōris	anterior-
posterior, ius	posteriōris	posterior-
superior, ius	superiōris	superior-
inferior, ius	inferiōris	inferior-
major, jus	majōris	major-
minor, minus	miniōris	minor-

We should note that the stem of the adjectives in the Comparative degree coincides with the Nominative masculine and feminine forms ending with -ior.

The Genitive Singular form in the Comparative degree is formed by adding the ending **-is** to the stem.

It is necessary to remember, that Latin adjectives in the Comparative degree are always placed last in the multiword term:

facies articulāris superior — superior articular surface

muscūlus obliquus capītis inferius — inferior oblique muscle of head.

Commonly, the Superlative degree is formed by adding the suffix **-issim-** and gender endings **-us, -a, -um** to the stem of the Positive degree:

Positive degree	Stem	Superlative degree	English equivalent
latus, a, um (broad, vast, wide)	lat-	latissimus, a, um	the broadest (vastest, widest), latissimus (in Anatomy)
longus, a, um (long)	long-	longissimus, a, um	the longest
subtilis, e (fine)	subtil-	subtilissimus, a, um	the finest

Some forms of Superlative degree are formed by special way:

Initial form	Superlative degree	English anatomical equivalent
magnus, a, um (great, large)	maximus, a, um	the greatest, maximus
parvus, a, um (little, small)	minimus, a, um	the least, minimus

The dictionary form of adjectives in the Superlative degree is similar to adjectives of the first group with the endings **-us, -a, -um**. They are declined also like the adjectives of the first group and their stem is determined similarly.

Now some notes about the use of Latin degree comparison forms that you should remember.

1. Forms **magnus / parvus** are used, if a solitary anatomical structure is indicated:

forāmen (occipitāle) magnum — foramen (occipital) magnum
arteria pancreatīca magna — greater pancreatic artery
vena magna cerēbri — great cerebral vein
nervus auriculāris magnus — great auricular nerve
muscūlus adductor magnus — adductor magnus (muscle)
nucleus magnus — large nucleus.

2. Forms **major / minor** are used, if dimensions of two similar and placed next to each other anatomical structures are compared:

ala major / ala minor — greater wing / lesser wing
pelvis major / pelvis minor — greater pelvis / lesser pelvis
nervus petrōsus major / nervus petrosus minor — greater petrosal nerve / lesser petrosal nerve
muscūlus pectorālis major / muscūlus pectorālis minor — pectoral major muscle / pectoral minor muscle
muscūlus teres major / muscūlus teres minor — teres major muscle / teres minor muscle.

1. Give orally the dictionary form of the following adjectives:

articulāris, compositum, dextrum, frontālis, impar, interna, libĕrum, nasāle, palatīna, sapiens, simplex, teres, thoracīcum, minor, anterius, minus, superior.

2. Correspond the following adjectives with the nouns:

articulatio, ōnis f (compositus, a, um; sinister, tra, trum; simplex, ĩcis);
caput, ĩtis n (minor, us; longus, a, um; brevis, e);
cornu, us n (occipitālis, e; hyoideus, a, um; superior, ius);
facies, ēi f (costālis, e; posterior, ius; dexter, tra, trum);
ganglion, i n (impar, āris; sublinguālis, e; superior, ius);
ligamentum, i n (teres, ětis; brevis, e; minor, us);
margo, ĩnis m (dexter, tra, trum; liber, ěra, ěrum; nasālis, e);
muscūlus, i m (teres, ětis; major, jus; latissĭmus, a, um);
nervus, i m (hypoglossus, a, um; occipitālis, e);
processus, us m (articulāris, e; palatĭnus, a, um; brevis, e).

3. Make up grammatical agreement of the adjectives with the nouns in Latin:

arch (dental, venous, left); artery (deep, lingual, right); bone (short, palatine, hyoid); canal (long, short, sacral); crest (lacrimal, external); duct (hepatic, sublingual); head (upper, lower); joint (complex, simple); process (palatine, costal); region (cervical, mastoid); tubercle (carotid, lateral); vein (deep, sacral); vertebra (prominent, thoracic); vessel (left, lymphatic).

4. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the following terms into Latin in Nominative and Genitive cases:

articular surface; costal arch; deep lymphatic vessel; frontal crest; lateral vein; anterior ethmoidal opening; left hepatic duct; long ligament; medial root; labial artery; occipital angle; oval opening; palatine process; superficial vein; vertebral column; lesser wing; lower lip; greater petrosal nerve; teres minor muscle.

5. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

arcus anterior atlantis; concha nasālis suprĕma; crista tubercūli majōris; facies anterior partis petrōsae; fossa cranii anterior; labium faciēi inferius; muscūlus longissĭmus capĭtis; muscūlus palpĕbrae superiōris; pars libĕra membri superiōris; sulcus sinus petrōsi inferiōris.

I. Latin–English vocabulary

Nouns of the 1st declension

arteria, ae f — artery
fossa, ae f — fossa, little hole
concha, ae f — concha, shell
palpĕbra, ae f — eyelid

Nouns of the 2nd declension

labium, i n — lip
membrum, i n — limb
ligamentum, i n — ligament
muscūlus, i m — muscle

Nouns of the 3rd declension

articulatio, ōnis f — joint
margo, ĩnis m — margin, border
atlas, antis m — atlas (the first cervical vertebra)
pars, partis f — part

Nouns of the 4th declension

arcus, us m — arch

Adjectives of the 1st group including forms of the superlative degree

compositus, a, um — complex
dexter, tra, trum — right
hyoideus, a, um — hyoid
(bone)
hypoglossus, a, um — hypo-
glossal (nerve)
latissimus, a, um — latissimus
(muscle), the broadest
longus, a, um — long
liber, ěra, ěrum — free

magnus, a, um — large (nucleus), magnum
(foramen), magnus (adductor (muscle)),
great (nerve, vein), greater (artery)
mastoideus, a, um — mastoid
palatĭnus, a, um — palatine
petrōsus, a, um — petrosal (nerve, sinus),
petrous (part)
sinister, tra, trum — left
sacer, cra, crum — sacral (bone)
suprĕmus, a, um — supreme

Adjectives in the form of Comparative degree

anterior, ius — anterior
inferior, ius — inferior, lower
major, jus — major, greater

posterior, ius — posterior
superior, ius — superior, upper
minor, minus — minor, lesser

Adjectives of the 2nd group

alĕris, e — alar
articulĕris, e — articular
brevis, e — short
communĭcans, ntis — communi-
cating
costĕlis, e — costal
frontĕlis, e — frontal
impar, ěris — impar, unpaired

nasĕlis, e — nasal
occipitĕlis, e — occipital
sacrĕlis, e — sacral
simplex, ĭcis — simple
sublinguĕlis, e — sublingual (except
nerve and bone)
teres, ětis — round (except foramen)

II. English–Latin vocabulary

arch — arcus, us m
artery — arteria, ae f
articular — articulĕris, e
back — dorsum, i n
carotid — carotĭcus, a, um
cervical — cervicĕlis, e
column — columna, ae f
complex — compositus, a, um
costal — costĕlis, e
crest — crista, ae f
deep — profundus, a, um
dental — dentĕlis, e
external — externus, a, um
hepatic — hepaticus, a, um
long — longus, a, um
hyoid — hyoideus, a, um (os)
joint — articulatio, ōnis f
lacrimal — lacrimĕlis, e
lateral — laterĕlis, e
left — sinister, tra, trum
lesser — minor, minus

lymphatic — lymphaticus, a, um
mastoid — mastoideus, a, um
medial — mediĕlis, e
occipital — occipitĕlis, e
oval — ovĕlis, e
palatine — palatĭnus, a, um
petrosal — petrōsus, a, um
prominent — prominens, entis
pterygoid — pterygoideus, a, um
right — dexter, tra, trum
sacral — sacrĕlis, e (except os)
short — brevis, e
simple — simplex, ĭcis
sublingual — sublingualis, e (except os
and nervus)
superficial — superficiĕlis, e
superior — superior, ius
upper — superior, ius
vein — vena, ae f
venous — venōsus, a, um
vertebral — vertebrĕlis, e

lingual — linguālis, e
lower — inferior, ius

vessel — vas, vasis n
wing — ala, ae f

LESSON 4 NOMINATIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

The Nominative Plural forms for both nouns and adjectives are formed by adding the Nominative Plural endings to their stem. These endings, particularly in the 2nd, 3rd and 4th declensions, depend on the gender and declension of nouns and adjectives, as shown in this table:

Declension	Gender	Nominative Singular	Stem	Nominative Plural endings	Nominative Plural form
I	f	vertēbra thoracīca	vertebr- thoracic-	-ae	vertēbrae thoracīcae
II	m	sulcus dexter	sulc- dextr-	-i	sulci dextri
	n	septum latum ganglion otīcum	sept- lat- gangli- otic-	-a	septa lata ganglia otīca
III	m	homo sapiens	homin- sapien-	-es	homīnes sapientes
	f	pars commūnis	part- commun-	-es	partes commūnes
	n	rete mirabile	ret- mirabil-	-ia	retia mirabilia
forāmen anterior		foramin- anterior-	-a	foramīna anteriorōra	
IV	m	processus	process-	-us	processus
	n	cornu	corn-	-ua	cornua
V	f	facies	faci-	-es	facies

As we can observe, only neutral nouns of the 3rd declension have two variants. The following rules of their ending differentiation are to be memorized.

1. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative Singular get the ending **-ia**:

animal (Engl. animal) — animalia (Nom. plur.)

pulvīnar (Engl. pillow, anatom. pulvinar) — pulvinaria (Nom. plur.)

rete (Engl. net, network, anatom. network) — retia (Nom. plur.)

2. Neutral adjectives of the 3rd declension except adjectives in the Comparative form get the ending **-ia**:

Dictionary form	Neutral form	Stem	Nominative Plural form
acer, cris, cre celer, ěris, ěre frontālis, e	acre celěre frontāle	acr- celer- frontal-	acria celeria frontalia

Dictionary form	Neutral form	Stem	Nominative Plural form
brevis, e prominens, ntis impar, āris simplex, ĩcis	breve prominens impar simplex	brev- prominent- impar- simplic-	brevia prominentia imparia simplicia

Nouns which don't belong to the first point of the shown above rule as well as adjectives in the Comparative form get the ending **-a** in the Nominative Plural:

forāmen superius (sing.) — foramīna superiōra (plur.)
caput minus (sing.) — capīta minōra (plur.)

A certain number of nouns in the anatomical terms is used in the shortened forms. You have to memorize these abbreviations:

Singular form		Plural form	
Full form	Abbreviation	Full form	Abbreviation
arteria	a.	arteriae	aa.
bursa	b.	bursae	bb.
forāmen	f.	foramīna	forr.
ganglion	gangl.	ganglia	gangll.
glandūla	gl.	glandūlae	gll.
ligamentum	lig.	ligamenta	ligg.
musculus	m.	musculi	mm.
nervus	n.	nervi	nn.
nucleus	nucl.	nuclei	nucll.
ramus	r.	rami	rr.
vagīna	vag.	vagīnae	vagg.
vena	v.	venae	vv.

1. Write down the dictionary form, translate each word combination into Latin and then make up the Nominative Plural:

alveolar arch; cervical surface; coccygeal horn; deciduous tooth; greater palatine canal; impar ganglion; inferior nuchal line; jugular foramen; posterior tubercle; sphenoidal process; superior nasal meatus; temporal fossa; tympanic cavity; third molar tooth or wisdom tooth; zygomatic bone.

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

aa. ciliāres posteriōres breves; cartilagīnes laryngis; forr. palatīna minōra; gangll. pelvīca; gll. thyroideae accessoriae; labia oris; ligg. collateralia; mm. rotatōres cervīcis; nn. labiāles anteriōres; nomīna anatomīca; nucll. vestibulāres; orgāna oculi accessoria; ossa cranii; partes corpōris humāni; plicae palatīnae transversae; radīces craniāles; rr. dorsāles linguae; regiōnes membri superiōris; vv. temporāles profundae; dentes incisīvi.

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate into Latin:

auditory ossicles; blood vessels of retina; borders of the nail; cavities of the body; costal notches; cranial nerves and sutures; dental alveoli; eyebrows and eyelashes; general terms; incisive canals; lesser palatine foramina; minor salivary glands; incisors and canine teeth; planes, lines and regions; true and false ribs.

I. Latin–English vocabulary

Nouns of the 1st declension

glandūla, ae f	— gland
papilla, ae f	— papilla
plica, ae f	— fold
sutūra, ae f	— suture

Nouns of the 2nd declension

jugum, i n	— yoke
orgānum, i n	— organ
ramus, i m	— branch
rectum, i n	— rectum

Nouns of the 3rd declension

impressio, ōnis f	— impression
nomen, ĩnis n	— name
m. (muscūlus, i m)	— rotator (muscle)
rotātor, ōris m	

Adjectives of the 1st group

accessorius, a, um	— accessory
anatomĭcus, a, um	— anatomical
digitātus, a, um	— digitate
humānus, a, um	— human
incisĭvus, a, um (dens)	— incisor (tooth)
otĭcus, a, um	— otic
transversus, a, um	— transverse

Adjectives of the 2nd group

alveolāris, e	— alveolar
brevis, e	— short
cerebrālis, e	— cerebral
ciliāris, e	— ciliary
collaterālis, e	— collateral
craniālis, e	— cranial
dorsālis, e	— dorsal
genitālis, e	— genital
labiālis, e	— labial
vestibulāris, e	— vestibular

II. English–Latin vocabulary

alveolus — alveŏlus, i m	incisive — incisĭvus, a, um
auditory — auditorius, a, um	jugular — jugulāris, e
blood — 1) sanguis, ĩnis m; 2) sanguineus, a, um	line — linea, ae f
	mirabile — mirabĭlis, e

brachial — brachiālis, e
 branch — ramus, i m
 canine — canīnus, a, um
 common — commūnis, e
 cord — fascicūlus, i m
 costal — costālis, e
 deciduous — deciduus, a, um
 foramen, opening — forāmen, ĩnis n
 yebrow — supercilium, i n
 eyelash — cilium, i n
 false — spurius, a, um
 fibular (=peroneal) — fibulāris, e
 (=peronēus, a, um)
 fold — plica, ae f
 fossa — fossa, ae f
 general — generālis, e
 girdle — cingūlum, i n
 impar — impar, āris

molar (tooth) — molāris, e (dens)
 muscular — musculāris, e
 nail — unguis, is m
 notch — incisūra, ae f
 nuchal — nuchālis, e
 ossicle — ossicūlum, i n
 permanent — permānens, ntis
 plane — planum, i n
 proper — proprius, a, um
 retina — retīna, ae f
 salivary — salivarius, a, um
 suture — sutūra, ae f
 third — tertius, a, um
 true — verus, a, um
 trunk — truncus, i m
 wisdom — sapientia, ae f
 term — termīnus, i m
 zygomatic — zygomatīcus, a, um

LESSON 5

GENITIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

Both nouns and adjectives get the Genitive Plural forms by adding the Genitive Plural endings to their stem, depending mostly on noun and adjective declension, as one may see in the following table:

Declension	Gender	Nominative Singular	Stem	Genitive Plural endings	Genitive Plural form
I	f	vertēbra thoracīca	vertebr- thoracic-	-ārum	vertebrārum thoracicārum
II	m	sulcus dexter	sulc- dextr-	-ōrum	sulcōrum dextrōrum
	n	ganglion otīcum	gangli- otic-		gangliōrum oticōrum
III	m	canālis brevis dens permānens	canal- brev- dent- permanent-	-ium	canalium brevium dentium permanentium
	f	pars laterālis	part- lateral-		partium lateralium
	n	os simplex rete articulāre	oss- simplic- ret- articular-		ossium simplicium retium articularium
III	m	margo anterior	margin- anterior-		margīnum anteriōrum

	f	articulatio inferior	articulation- inferior-	-um	articulatiōnum inferiōrum
	n	forāmen majus	foramin- major-		foramīnum majōrum
IV	m	arcus	arc-	-uum	arcuum
	n	cornu	corn-		cornuum
V	f	facies	faci-	-ērum	faciērum

As we can see, masculine, feminine and neutral nouns and adjectives of the third declension have two variants of the endings.

The ending **-ium** is added to the stems of:

1. Parisyllaba, i. e. the masculine and feminine nouns which have equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive: canālis, is m *canal*; basis, is f *base*.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral nouns, if their stem ends with two consonants: dens, dentis m *tooth*; pars, partis f *part*; os, ossis n *bone*.

3. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative Singular: animal, ālis n *animal*; calcar, āris n *calcar (spur)*; rete, is n *net, network*.

4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the Positive degree, see in the table above the adjectives brevis, e *short*; permānens, ntis *permanent*; laterālis, e *lateral*; simplex, ĩcis *simple*; articulāris, e *articular*.

The ending **-um** is added to the stems of:

1. All nouns which don't belong to the three first groups of the explained above rules, see, e. g., in the table the nouns margo, ĩnis m *margin, border*; articulatio, ōnis f *joint*; forāmen, ĩnis n *opening*.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the Comparative degree, see in the table the adjectives anterior, ius *anterior*; inferior, ius *inferior, lower*; major, jus *major, greater*.

Some Latin nouns are used only in the Plural and their dictionary forms are accordingly represented in the Nominative and Genitive Plural: fauces, ium (faucium) f *fauces*; species, ērum (speciērum) f *species*.

Attention! The noun vas, vasis n in the Singular belongs to the third declension, but in the Plural — to the second one, compare: nervi vasis — nerves of a vessel, but nervi vasōrum — nerves of the vessels.

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and make up Nominative Singular and Genitive Plural forms of each word combination:

anterior tubercle; costal process; floating rib; greater wing; internal base; left spur; greater opening; lesser sublingual duct; longitudinal ligament; long root; permanent tooth; posterior surface; respiratory region; right crest; sacral horn; short muscle; simple joint; venous network; vertebral canal.

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

ligamenta ossiculōrum auditoriōrum; medulla ossium flava et rubra; musculi arrectōres pilōrum; musculi palati mollis et faucium; nervi vasōrum lymphaticōrum; ostia venārum pulmonalium; plexus cavernōsi conchārum; processus accessorius vertebrārum lumbalium; situs viscerum inversus; vagīnae fibrōsae digitōrum manus.

3. Give the dictionary form and translate into Latin:

arteries of lower limbs; dividing walls of the frontal sinuses; heads of the true, false and floating ribs; muscles of auditory ossicles; muscles of soft palate and fauces; nerves and vessels of the vessels; nodules of semilunar cusps; sinus of the venae cavae (venae cavae — Gen. Plur.!); surface of the canine teeth; tubercles of thoracic vertebrae (thoracic vertebrae — Gen. plur.!).

I. Latin–English vocabulary

Nouns of the 1st declension

medulla, ae f — marrow (bone marrow — medulla ossium) vagīna, ae f — vagina, sheath

Nouns of the 2nd declension

ossicūlum, i n — ossicle palātum, i n — palate
ostium, i n — opening pilus, i m — hair

Nouns of the 3rd declension

m. arrector, ōris m — arrector (muscle) fauces, ium f (Plur.) — fauces
viscus, ěris n; usually — viscera, inner organs
Plur. viscēra, um n

Nouns of the 4th declension

manus, us f — hand

Adjectives of the 1st group

auditorius, a, um — auditory flavus, a, um — yellow
cavernōsus, a, um — cavernous inversus, a, um — inverse
fibrōsus, a, um — fibrous ruber, bra, brum — red

Adjectives of the 2nd group

lumbālis, e — lumbar pulmonālis, e — pulmonary
mollis, e — soft

II. English–Latin vocabulary

cuspid	— valvūla, ae f	permanent	— permānens, ntis
extensor (unbending muscle)	— m. extensor, ōris m	respiratory	— respiratorius, a, um
false	— spurius, a, um	semilunar	— semilunāris, e
floating	— fluctuans, ntis	soft	— mollis, e
limb	— membrum, i n	spur	— calcar, āris n
nodule	— nodūlus, i m	stomach	— gaster, tris f
ossicle	— ossicūlum, i n	true	— verus, a, um
palate	— palātum, i n	wall	— paries, ětis m

LESSON 6

THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF THE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

The Latin case Accusative reflects the direct object by answering the questions «Whom? What?». In this function it corresponds to the Russian case called «Винительный» or in German to the case Akkusativ.

Nouns masculine and feminine as well as adjectives get the Accusative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stem, as one may see in the table below. Neutral nouns and adjectives have no special Accusative endings: Accusative Singular form corresponds to the form of the Nominative Singular and the Accusative Plural form — to the form of the Nominative Plural:

Declension	Gender	Nominative Singular	Acc. sing. endings	Accusative Singular form	Acc.plur. endings	Accusative Plural form
I	f	vena cava	-am	venam cavam	-as	venas cavas
II	m	ramus dexter sulcus palatīnus	-um	ramum dextrum sulcum palatīnum	-os	ramos dextros sulcos palatīnos
	n	ganglion otīcum septum longum	=Nom. sing.	ganglion otīcum septum longum	=Nom. plur. (-a)	ganglia otīca septa longa
III	m	margo anterior canālis nutriens	-em	margīnem anteriōrem canālem nutrientem	-es	margīnes anteriōres canāles nutrientes
	f	pars laterālis basis simplex pelvis major	-em (-im)	partem laterālem basim simplicem pelvim majōrem	-es	partes laterāles bases simplices pelves majōres
	n	rete capillāre crus posterius	=Nom. sing.	rete capillāre crus posterius	=Nom. plur. (-a, -ia)	retia capillaria crura posteriōra
IV	m	processus	-um	processum	-us	processus
	n	cornu	=Nom. sing.	cornu	=Nom. plur. (-ua)	cornua
V	f	facies	-em	faciem	-es	facies

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns in the Accusative Singular can get endings **-im** or **-em**. The ending **-im** should have:

Prefix and its variants	Meaning	Examples	Translation
circum-	disposition around some object	circumferentia, ae f	circuference
in- (im-)	1) mowing inward 2) denial of any quality	infundubulum, i n impressio, ōnis f impar, āris innominātus, a, um	infundubulum impression impar, unpaired, odd innominate
infra-	disposition lower some object	infraorbitālis, e	infraorbital
inter-	disposition between some objects	interdentālis, e	inerdental
intra-	disposition inside some object	intraarticulāris, e	intraarticular
per-	preservation in space or time	permānens, ntis	permanent
post-, retro-	disposition behind something in space or time	postcentrālis, e postoperatīvus, a, um retromolāris, e	postcentral postoperative retromolar
sub-	disposition under some object	submandibulāris, e	submandibular
super, supra	disposition over some object	superficiālis, e supratonsillāris, e	superficial supratonsillar

1. Give the dictionary form of each word; make up forms of the Nominative singular, Accusative Singular and Plural:

anterior margin; ascending artery; external base; frontal surface; greater pelvis; hepatic duct; left lung; lesser horn; lymphatic vessel; nasal bone; right part; respiratory system; short nerve; vertebral canal.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into English:

ad corōnam dentis; ante et post operationem; ante labia; circum oculus sinistrum; in canālem dentis incisivi; in radīcem longam; inter ossa; intra venam faciālem; sub gingivam; per os; per pelvim minōrem; per rectum; sub linguam.

3. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:

above the left eye; after death; between the incisors; before and after tooth extraction; between pulp and dentine; by means of the long canal; for cough; for internal (external) use; into the deep vein; inside the sublingual artery; on the superior surface of the tooth; round the mouth; through the upper lip; under the lingual surface; via the common carotid artery.

4. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:

accessory cusp; postsulcal part; supratonsillar fossa; interalveolar septa; infraorbital canal; minor sublingual ducts; superficial part; retromandibular vein; cardiac impression; infrahyoid muscles; innominate substance.

I. Latin–English vocabulary

Prepositions with the Accusative

ad	— 1) to, toward 2) for 3) during, in
ante	— 1) before (time) 2) in front of (space)
circum	— around, round
contra	— against, for
in (to the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»)	— in, into, on
infra	— below, under
inter	— among (more than two objects), between (two objects)
intra	— inside
per	— 1) through, via 2) by (means of)
post	— 1) after (time) 2) behind (space)
sub (to the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»)	— under
super, supra	— above

Other words

aditus, us m	— aditus
antrum, i n	— antrum, cave
auriculāris, e	— auricular
corōna, ae f	— crown
corōna dentis	— crown (of tooth)
dens, dentis m	— tooth
difficilis, e	— difficult
flavus, a, um	— yellow

II. English–Latin vocabulary

Prepositions

above	— super, supra
after	— post
among	— inter
around	— circum
before	— ante
behind	— post
between	— inter
by (means of)	— per
during	— ad
for	— ad
in	— in (to the question «where to?»)
in front of	— ante
inside	— intra
into	— in (to the question «where to?»)
on	— in (to the question «where to?»)

round	— see around
to	— ad
through	— per
under	— infra, sub (to the question «where to?»))

Other words

ascending	— ascendens, ntis
childebirth	— partus, us m
cough	— tussis, is f
death	— mors, mortis f
dentine	— dentīnum, i n
extraction	— extractio, ōnis f
leg	— pes, pedis m
operation	— operatio, ōnis f
pulp	ae f
use	— usus, us m

LESSON 7

ABLATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF THE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE

Ablative is the Latin case reflecting different circumstances and conditions which characterize the indirect object (mood of the action, time, place, reason and so one).

Both nouns and adjectives get the Ablative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stems, as one may see in the table below:

Dec- lension	Gen- der	Nominative Singular	Abl. sing. ending	Ablative Singu- lar form	Abl. plur. ending	Ablative Plural form
I	f	vena cava	-ā	vena cava	-is	venis cavis
II	m	ramus dexter sulcus palatīnus	-o	ramo dextro sulco palatīno	-is	ramis dextris sulcis palatīnis
	n	ganglion otīcum septum longum		ganglio otīco septo longo		gangliis otīcis septis longis
III	m	margo anterior canālis nutriens	-e (i)	margīne anteriōre canāle nutrienti	-ibus	marginībus anteri- orībus canalībus nutrientībus
	f	pars laterālis basis simplex		parte laterāli basi simplici		partībus lateralībus basībus simplicībus
	n	rete capillāre crus posterius		reti capillāri crure posterīore		retībus capillarībus crurībus posterīorībus
IV	m	processus	-u	processu	-ibus	processūbus
	n	cornu	-u	cornu		cornūbus
V	f	facies	-e	facie	-ēbus	faciēbus

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns and adjectives in the Ablative singular can get endings **-e** or **-i**.

The ending **-i** is added to the stem of:

1. Neutral nouns with endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative Singular (we have already mentioned about these nouns in the previous lessons): *animal*, *ālis* n — *animāli*; *calcar*, *āris* n — *calcāri*; *rete*, *is* n — *reti*.

2. Feminine nouns: *pelvis*, *is* f (*pelvis*) — *pelvi*; *febris*, *is* f (*fever*) — *febri*; *tussis*, *is* f (*cough*) — *tussi*.

3. Feminine nouns with ending **-sis**: *basis*, *is* f (*base*) — *basi*.

4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the Positive degree as well as participles: *brevis*, *e* (*short*) — *brevi*; *capillāris*, *e* (*capillary*) — *capillāri*; *simplex*, *īcis* (*simple*) — *simplici*; *fluctuans*, *ntis* (*floating*) — *fluctuanti*.

The ending **-e** is added to the stem of:

1. All nouns which don't belong to the three first groups of the explained above rules, — see, for example, in the table the nouns *margo*, *canālis*, *pars*, *crus*.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the Comparative degree, — see in the table the adjective *anterior*, *ius* and *posterior*, *ius*.

Preposition	Meaning	Examples	Translation
a, ab (before a vowel)	from	a sulco rhināli ab axe optico	from rhinal sulcus from optical axis
cum	with	cum nervo faciāli cum febris continua	with facial nerve with continued fever
de	1) about 2) from	de ossibus cranii de gingiva	about the skull bones from the gingiva (gum)
e (ex)	1) from (about the movement from within) 2) from, of (about material)	e canāle sacrāli e cavitāte abdominis ex fructibus Rosae e fibrīs elastīcis	from the sacral canal from the abdomen cavity of dog-rose fruits from elastic fibers
in	in, on (to the question «where?»)	in cavitāte pleurāli in facie unguis	in the pleural cavity on the nail surface
pro	1) for 2) before	pro reti venōso guttae pro oculis pro lingua	for venous network drops for eyes before the tongue
sine	without	sine pancreāte accessorio sine dentibus serotinis	without accessory pancreas without wisdom teeth
sub	under (to the question «where?»)	sub cute capitis sub narcōsi locāli	under the skin of head under a local anaesthesia

Prefix and its variants	Meaning	Example	Translation
a-, ab-	mowing away	(muscūlus) abductor, ōris m	abductor (muscle)
com- (col-, con-, cor-)	1) movement together 2) junction	compositus, a, um collaterālis, e connectīvus, a, um m. constrictor, ōris m	complex collateral connective constrictor (muscle)
de-	1) movement downward 2) removing	deciduus, a, um m. depressor, ōris m depulpatio, ōnis f	deciduous (tooth) depressor (muscle) depulpatio
e- (ef-, ex-)	movement out	effērens, ntis m. extensor, ōris m	efferent extensor (muscle)
pre-, pro-	disposition before something in space or time	premolāris, e (dens) processus, us m promīnens, ntis	premolar (tooth) process prominent

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, make up the forms of Ablative Singular and Plural:

floating rib; right region; short nerve; sacral horn; inner base; left canal; long spur; lymphatic vessel; simple joint; bony tissue; continued fever; canine tooth; lesser pelvis; accessory pancreas.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word; translate from Latin into English:

glandūlae sine ductībus; in regionībus membri superiōris; sub muscūlis facialībus; pro reti venōso; cum febri continua; sub tunīca musculāri; a crista capītis costae; sanguis ex vena pro analysi; ab angūlo inferiōre; de terminis generalībus.

3. Give the dictionary form of each word; translate from English into Latin:

from the surface of knee; in the thoracic vein; under a local (general) anaesthesia; for external use; about the abdominal muscles; with a wandering kidney; without upper incisors; for nervous system; from the head to the feet.

4. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into English:

dentes decidui; vasa efferentia; articulatio composita; muscūlus depressor supercillii; ramus comunicans cum nervo faciāli; nervi abducentes; processus promīnens.

**I. Latin–English vocabulary
Prepositions with Ablative**

a, ab	— from
cum	— with
de	— 1) about 2) from
e, ex	— 1) from (about the movement from within)

2) from, of (about material)

in (to the question «where?») — in, on
 pro — 1) for 2) before
 sine — without
 sub (to the question «where?») — under

Other words

abdūcens, ntis — abducent
 connectīvus, a, um — connective
 continuus, a, um — continued
 faciālis, e — facial
 generālis, e — general
 humānus, a, um — human
 musculāris, e — muscular
 m. depressor, ōris m — depressor (lowing muscle)
 promīnens, entis — prominent
 scapūla, ae f — scapula
 structurā, ae f — structure
 termīnus, i m — term
 tunīca, ae f — layer, coat

II. English–Latin vocabulary

anaesthesia — anaesthesia, ae f
 continued — continuus, a, um
 general — generālis, e
 local — locālis, e
 medicine — medicamentum, i n
 tissue — textus, us m
 wandering — migrans, ntis

Declension	I	II	III	IV	V
Gender					
	-ā		different		
					-ēi
	-ā				
	-ārum	-ōrum			-ērum
			-ībus	-ībus	-ēbus

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:

1) paries anterior gastris 2) frenulum labii inferioris 3) rr. dorsales linguae
4) ligamenta ossiculorum auditoriorum 5) organa oculi accessoria 6) pro reti venoso

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:

1) deep lingual artery 2) teres minor muscle 3) surface of incisor 4) planes, lines and regions 5) heads of the true, false and floating ribs 6) by means of the long canal

To cope with this final test you have to review (revise) thoroughly every home task, because all the terms of this test have been taken from your exercises. But the most effective way to success is your thorough learning and preparation for every lesson during the time of your studies.

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

a, ab (Abl.) from
accessorius, a, um accessory
acusticus, a, um auditory
ad (Acc.) 1) to, toward 2) for 3) during, in
adhesio, ōnis f adhesion
adiposus, a, um fat
aditus, us m aditus
ala, ae f wing
alāris, e alar
alveolāris, e alveolar
ampullāris, e ampullary
analýsis, is f analysis
anatomīcus, a, um anatomical
angūlus, i m angle
ante (Acc.) 1) before (time) 2) in front of (space)
antebrachium, i n antebrachium, forearm
anterior, ius anterior
antihēlix, icis f; anthēlix, icis f antihelix (anthelix)
antitrāgus, i m antitragus
antrum, i n antrum, cave
apex, icis m apex, top
apparātus, us m apparatus
appendix, icis f appendix
arachnoideus, a, um arachnoid
arbor, ōris f tree
arbor vitae arbor vitae
arcus, us m arch
arteria, ae f artery
arteriōsus, a, um arterial
articulāris, e articular
articulatio, ōnis f joint
atlas, ntis m atlas (the first cervical vertebra)
auditorius, a, um auditory
auricūla, ae f auricle; pinna
auriculāris, e auricular
auris, is f ear
axis, is m axis

B

basis, is f base
biliāris, e (=felleus, a, um) gall (+noun)
bipennātus, a, um bipennate
biventer, tra, trum two-bellied
brevis, e short
bulbus, i m (ocūli) eyeball

C

cadāver, ěris n cadaver (dead body)
calicūlus, i m (gustatorius) bud
canālis, is m canal
cancer, cri m cancer
canīnus, a, um (dens) canine (tooth)
capsūla, ae f capsule
caput, itis n head
cardiācus, a, um cardiac
carotīcus, a, um carotid
cartilāgo, ĩnis f cartilage
cauda, ae f tail
cavernōsus, a, um cavernous
cavitas, ātis f cavity
celer, ěris, ěre rapid, quick (pulse)
cerebellum, i n cerebellum
cerebrālis, e cerebral
cervicālis, e cervical
cervix, icis f cervix
ciliāris, e ciliary
circum (Acc.) around, round
circumferentiālis, e circumferential
circumferentia, ae f circumference
coccygēus, a, um coccygeal
coccyx, ŷgis m coccyx, coccygeal bone
cochleāris, e cochlear
collaterālis, e collateral
communīcans, ntis communicative
compositus, a, um complex
concha, ae f concha (shell-shaped hole)
connectivus, a, um connective
continuus, a, um continued
contra (Acc.) against, for
cor, cordis n heart
cornu, us n horn, horn-shaped process

corōna, ae f crown
corpus, ōris n body
cortex, ĩcis m cortex (crust)

costa, ae f rib

costālis, e costal

craniālis, e cranial

cranium, i n skull

crista, ae f crest

crus, cruris n 1) shank, leg; 2) crus, limb (of auditory ossicle); 3) bundle (of myocardium)

cum (Abl.) with

cutis, is f skin

D

de (Abl.) 1) about 2) from

deciduus, a, um (dens) deciduous (tooth)

dens, dentis m tooth

dens canīnus canine tooth

dens deciduus deciduous tooth

dens incisīvus incisor tooth

dens molāris molar tooth

dens permānens permanent tooth

dens premolāris premolar tooth

dens sapientiae wisdom tooth

dentālis, e dental

dexter, tra, trum right

diamēter, tri f diameter

diaphragma, ātis n diaphragm

diencephālon, i n diencephalon

difficīlis, e difficult

digastrīcus, a um digastric

digitātus, a, um digitate

digītus, i m finger, toe

distālis, e distal

dorsālis, e dorsal

ductus, us m duct

duodēnum, i n duodenum

dura mater dura mater (the outermost meninx of the brain)

durus, a, um solid

E

e, ex (Abl.) 1) from (about the movement from within) 2) from, of (about material)

eminentia, ae f eminence

encephālon i n brain

endocrīnus, a, um endocrine

et and

epitympanīcus, a, um epitympanic

externus, a, um external

extracapsulāris, e extracapsular

F

faciālis, e facial

facies, ēi f face, surface

fascia, ae f fascia

fascia lata fascia lata

fauces, ium f fauces

febris, is f fever

felleus, a, um (= biliāris, e) gall (+noun)

femīna, ae f woman

femur, ōris n femur, thigh (bone)

fibra, ae f fibre

fibrōsus, a, um fibrous

flavus, a, um yellow

forāmen, ĩnis n opening

fossa, ae f fossa (little hole)

frontālis, e frontal

G

ganglion, i n ganglion, nervous node

gaster, tris f stomach

gemma, ae f bud

generālis, e general

genitālis, e genital

gingīva, ae f gingiva, gum

glandūla, ae f gland

glomus, ěris n glomus, a cluster of blood vessels

gustatorius, a, um taste (+noun)

H

hemispherium, i n hemisphere

hepar, ātis n liver

hepatīcus, a, um hepatic

homo, ĩnis m man

humānus, a, um human

hyoideus, a, um hyoid (bone)

hypochondriācus, a, um hypochondriac

hypogastrīcus, a, um hypogastric

hypoglossus, a, um hypoglossal (nerve)

I

iliācus, a, um iliac
impar, āris impar, unpaired
impressio, ōnis f impression
imus, a, um imus (ima), the lowest
in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”) in, into, on
in (Abl., when answering the question “where?”, Russian “где?”) in, on
incertus, a, um incerta (zona)
incisīvus, a, um (dens) incisor (tooth)
incisūra, ae f incisure, slit or notch
inferior, ius inferior
infra (Acc.) below, under
inter (Acc.) among (more than two objects), between (two objects)
interclaviculāris, e interclavicular
intercostālis, e intercostal
interlobāris, e interlobar
intermandibulāris, e intermandibular
internus, a, um internal
interosseus, a, um interosseal, interosseous
interpedunculāris, e interpeduncular
interthalamīcus, a, um interthalamic
intervertebrālis, e intervertebral
intra (Acc.) inside
intraglandulāris, e intraglandular
intrajugulāris, e intrajugular
intraoccipitālis, e intraoccipital
inversus, a, um inverse
iris, īdis f iris (central part of the eye)

J

jugum, i n yoke

L

labiālis, e labial
labium, i n lip
lamella, ae f lamella
larynx, ūngis m larynx
latus, a, um broad
liber, ěra, ěrum free
ligamentum, i n ligament
lingua, ae f tongue
longissīmus, a, um the longest
longitudinālis, e longitudinal

longus, a, um long
lumbālis, e lumbar
lymphaticus, a, um lymphatic

M

magnus, a, um large (nucleus), magnum (foramen), magnus (adductor (muscle)), great (nerve, vein), greater (artery)
major, jus major, greater, larger
mandibŭla, ae f mandible, lower jaw
manus, us f hand
margo, ĩnis m margin, border
massēter, ēris m see below m. masseter
mastoideus, a, um mastoid
mater, tris f mater (cerebral coat)
maxilla, ae f maxilla, upper jaw
meātus, us m meatus (passage)
medulla, ae f marrow
membrum, i n limb
mesencephalīcus, a, um mesencephalic
mesencephālon, i n mesencephalon
mesocōlon, i n mesocolon
metacarpālis, e metacarpal
metatarsus, i m metatarsus
minor, minus minor, lesser, smaller
minīmus, a, um the least, minimus
molāris, e (dens) molar (tooth)
mollis, e soft
musculāris, e muscular
musculus, i m muscle
m. adductor, ōris m adductor (bringing muscle)
m. arrector, ōris m arrector (muscle elevating hair)
m. depressor, ōris m depressor (lowing muscle)
m. levātor, ōris m levator (elevating muscle)
m. massēter, ēris m masseter
m. pronātor, ōris m pronator (muscle turning the forearm)
m. rotātor, ōris m rotātor
m. sphincter, ēris m sphincter (compressing muscle)
m. tensor, ōris m tensor (straining muscle)

N

nasālis, e nasal
nasus, i m nose
nervus, i m nerve
nucleus, i m nucleus
nomen, ĩnis n name

O

occipitālis, e occipital
ocūlus, i m eye
operatio, ōnis f operation
orbĭta, ae f orbit
orgānon, i n organ
os, oris n mouth
os, ossis n bone
osseus, a, um bony
ossicūlum, i n ossicle
ostium, i n opening, orifice
otĭcus, a, um otic

P

palatĭnus, a, um palatine
palātum, i n palate
palpĕbra, ae f eyelid
pancreaticus, a, um pancreatic
parapharyngeālis, e parapharyngeal
paraventriculohypophysĭalis, e paraventriculohypophysial
paravesicālis, e paravesical
paries, ĕtis m wall
parotideus, a, um parotid
pars, partis f part
partus, us m childbirth, delivery
parvus, a, um little, small
pecten, ĩnis m pecten (crest)
pelvĭcus, a, um pelvic
pelvis, is f pelvis
per (Acc.) 1) through, via 2) by (means of)
periventriculāris, e periventricular
permānens, entis (dens) permanent (tooth)
pes, pedis m foot
petrōsus, a, um petrosal (nerve, sinus), petrous (part)
phalanx, ngis f phalanx
pius, a, um (mater) pia (mater)
pilus, i m hair
planta, ae f sole

plexus, us m plexus (network, chiefly of veins or nerves)

plica, ae f fold

porta, ae f porta (gate of the liver)

post (Acc.) 1) after (time) 2) behind (space)

posterior, ius posterior

premolāris, e (dens) premolar (tooth)

preoccipitālis, e preoccipital

pro (Abl.) for

processus, us m process

profundus, a, um deep

proprius, a, um proper

pubes, is f pubis

pulmo, ōnis m lung

pulmonālis, e pulmonary

pulsus, us m pulse

pupilla, ae f pupil

pyrāmis, ĩdis f pyramid

Q

quadrātus, a, um square, quadrate (muscle), quadratus (pronator)

R

radix, ĭcis f radix, root

ramus, i m branch

recessus, us m recess

rectum, i n rectum

regio, ōnis f region

ren, renis m kidney

renālis, e renal

respiratorius, a, um respiratory

rete, is n 1) rete (mirabile) 2) network (dorsal venous of hand)

retromandibulāris, e retromandibular

retropharyngĕus, a, um retropharyngeal

rĭma, ae f fissure, opening

ruber, bra, brum red

S

sacrālis, e sacral

sanguis, ĩnis m blood

saphĕnus, a, um saphenous

sapiens, ntis intelligent, clever

sapientia, ae f wisdom

scapŭla, ae f scapula, shoulder blade

sectio, ōnis f section

segmentum, i n segment
semicircularis, e semicircular
semilunaris, e semilunar
septum, i n septum, dividing wall
seu or
simplex, ĩcis simple
sine (Abl.) without
sinister, tra, trum left
sinus, us m sinus, hollow curvature or cavity
situs, us m site
spatium, i n space
spina, ae f spine
spinālis, e spina
splanchnicus, a, um splanchnic
squama, ae f squamous part, scales
sternum, i n sternum, breast-bone
structūra, ae f structure
sub (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”; Abl., when answering the question “where?”, Russian “где?”) under
sublingualis e sublingual (except nerve and bone)
submandibularis, e submandibular
submucosus, a, um submucous
substantia, ae f substance
sulcus, i m sulcus, furrow or groove
super, supra (Acc.) above
superficialis, e superficial
superior, ius superior
supraorbital supraorbitalis, e
suprapleurālis, e suprapleural
suprarenālis, e suprarenal
suprēmus, a, um supreme, the highest
sutūra, ae f suture
symphysis, is f symphysis
synchondrosis, is f synchondrosis
syndesmōsis, is f syndesmosis
systema, ātis n system

T

temporalis, e temporal
teres, ětis round (except foramen)
terminatio, ōnis f ending
terminus, i m term
textus, us m tissue
thoracicus, a, um thoracic
thorax, ācis m thorax, chest
thyr(e)oideus, a, um thyroid
tractus, us m tract
tragus, i m tragus
transversus, a, um transverse
trigōnum, i n trigone
tuber, ěris n tuber, large rounded swelling
tuberculum, i n tubercle, small rounded swelling
tuberositas, ātis f tuberosity
tumor, ōris m tumor (swelling, growth)
tunica, ae f 1) layer, coat 2) membrane
tympānicus, a, um tympanic

U

unguis, is m nail
utērus, i m uterus

V

vagina, ae f (of muscle) vagina, sheath
vas, vasis n vessel
vena, ae f vein
venosus, a, um venous
venter, tris m belly (of the muscle)
vermiformis, e vermiform
vertēbra, ae f vertebra
vertebrālis, e vertebral
vesīca, ae f bladder
vestibularis, e vestibular
vestibulum, i n vestibule
vir, i m man
viscus, ěris n; usually Plur. viscēra, um n viscera, inner organs
vita, ae f life
vomer, ěris m vomer

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

A

abdomen abdōmen, ĩnis n
abdominal abdominālis, e
about de (Abl.)
above super, supra (Acc.)
accessory accessorius, a, um
adductor (bringing muscle) (muscūlus) ad-
 ductor, ōris m
after post (Acc.)
alveolar alveolāris, e
alveolus alveŏlus, i m
among inter (Acc.)
anaesthesia anaesthesia, ae f
and et
angle angŭlus, i m
anterior anterior, ius
aorta aorta, ae f
apex, tip apex, ĩcis m
arch arcus, us m
around circum (Acc.)
artery arteria, ae f
articular articulāris, e
 ascending ascendens, ntis
 auricular auriculāris, e
atlas atlas, antis m
auditory auditorius, a, um

B

back dorsum, i n
base basis, is f
before ante (Acc.)
behind post (Acc.)
between inter (Acc.)
blood 1) sanguis, ĩnis m;
 2) sanguineus, a, um
body corpus, ōris n
bone os, ossis n
bony osseus, a, um
border margo, ĩnis m
brachial brachiālis, e
brain cerēbrum, i n
branch ramus, i m

breast mamma, ae f
broadest latissĭmus, a, um
bronchial bronchiālis, e
bursa (pouch, sac) bursa, ae f
by (means of) per (Acc.)

C

canal canālis, is m
cancer, cri m cancer
canine (tooth) canĭnus, a, um
 (dens)
cardiac cardiācus, a, um
carotid carotĭcus, a, um
cartilage cartilāgo, ĩnis f
cava, cavae cavus, a, um
cavity cavĭtas, ātis f
cell cellŭla, ae f
central centrālis, e
cerebellum cerebellum, i n
cervical cervicālis, e
cervix cervix, ĩcis f
chiasm chiasma, ātis n
childbirth partus, us m
ciliary ciliāris, e
coccygeal coccygēus, a, um
colon colon, i n
column columna, ae f
common commŭnis, e
complex composĭtus, a, um
conjoint conjunctĭvus, a, um
constrictor (compressing muscle)
 (muscūlus) constrictor, ōris m
continued continuus, a, um
cord fascicŭlus, i m
costal costālis, e
cough tussis, is f
cranial craniālis, e
crest crista, ae f
crus crus, cruris n
culmen culmen, ĩnis n
curvature curvatŭra, ae f
cusp valvŭla, ae f

D

death mors, mortis f
deep profundus, a, um
dental dentālis, e
dentine dentīnum, i n
depressor (lowing muscle) (muscūlus) depressor, ōris m
diaphragm diaphragma, ātis n
digitus, digiti digītus, i m
distal distālis, e
dividing divīdens, entis
division divisio, ōnis f
dorsal dorsālis, e
duct ductus, us m
during ad (Acc.)

E

ear auris, is f
endocrine endocrīnus, a, um
epigastric epigastrīcus, a, um
ethmoidal ethmoidālis, e
extensor (unbending muscle) (muscūlus) extensor, ōris m
external externus, a, um
extraction extractio, ōnis f
eyebrow supercilium, i n
eyelash cilium, i n

F

face facies, ēi f
false spurius, a, um
falx falx, falcis f
fascia fascia, ae f
fauces fauces, ium f (plur.)
fever febris, is f
fibrous fibrōsus, a, um
fibular (= peroneal) fibulāris, e (= peronēus, a, um)
fissure fissūra, ae f
flexor (bending muscle) (muscūlus) flexor, ōris m
floating fluctuans, ntis
fold plica, ae f
foot pes, pedis m
for ad (Acc.), pro (Abl.)
foramen, opening forāmen, īnis n
forearm antebrachium, i n

forest silvestris, e
forehead sincīput, ītis n
fornix fornix, īcis m
forth quartus, a, um
fossa fossa, ae f
free liber, ěra, ěrum
from a, ab (Abl.); e, ex (Abl.)
frontal frontālis, e

G

gall bladder vesīca fellea
(= vesīca biliāris)
ganglion, nervous node ganglion, i n
gastric gastrīcus, a, um
general generālis, e
girdle cingūlum, i n
gland glandūla, ae f
gluteal glutēus, a, um
great magnus, a, um
greater major, jus
groove sulcus, i m

H

hallux hallux, ūcis m
hand manus, us f
head caput, ītis n
heart cor, cordis n
hepatic hepatīcus, a, um
highest suprēmus, a, um
horn cornu, us n
hyoid hyoideus, a, um (os)

I

ima imus, a, um
impar impar, āris
in in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”; Abl., when answering the question “where?”)
incisive incisīvus, a, um
incisor (tooth) incisīvus, a, um (dens)
incus incus, ūdis f
index (index finger) index, īcis m
inferior inferior, ius
in front of ante (Acc.)
inguinal inguinālis, e
inner internus, a, um

inside intra (Acc.)
intelligent sapiens, entis
interclavicular interclaviculāris, e
intercostal intercostālis, e
interlobar interlobāris, e
intermandibular intermandibulāris, e
internal internus, a, um
interosseal interosseus, a, um
interosseous interosseus, a, um
into in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”)
intraglandular intraglandulāris, e
iris iris, ĭdis f

J

joint articulatio, ōnis f
jugular jugulāris, e

K

kidney ren, renis m
knee genu, us n

L

lacrimal lacrimālis, e
lactiferous lactifērus, a, um
large magnus, a, um
larynx larynx, ngis m
lateral laterālis, e
latissimus latissĭmus, a, um
left sinister, tra, trum
leg pes, pedis m
lesser minor, minus
ligament ligamentum, i n
limb membrum, i n
line linea, ae f
lingual linguālis, e
lip labium, i n
liver hepar, ātis n
local locālis, e
long longus, a, um
longest longissĭmus, a, um
longitudinal longitudinālis, e
lower inferior, ius
lower jaw, mandible mandibŭla, ae f
lung pulmo, ōnis m
lymphatic lymphatĭcus, a, um

M

magnus, magnum magnus, a, um

major major, jus
man homo, ĩnis m
mandible mandibŭla, ae f
margin margo, ĩnis m
mastoid mastoideus, a, um
meatus meātus, us m
medial mediālis, e
medicine medicamentum, i n
membrane membrāna, ae f
membranous membranaceus, a, um
middle medius, a, um
minimus minĭmus, a, um
minor minor, minus
mirabile mirābilis, e
mobile mobĭlis, e
molar (tooth) molāris, e (dens)
molar tooth dens molaris
mouth os, oris n
muscular musculāris, e
muscle muscŭlus, i m

N

nail unguis, is m
nasal nasālis, e
neck cervix, ĩcis f
nerve nervus, i m
nervous node ganglion, i n
nervous nervŏsus, a, um
network rete, is n
node nodus, i m
nodule nodŭlus, i m
nose nasus, i m
notch incisŭra, ae f
nuchal nuchālis, e
nucleus nucleus, i m

O

occipital occipitālis, e
occiput occīput, ĭtis n
on in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”, Abl., when answering the question “where?”)
opening forāmen, ĭnis n
operation operatio, ōnis f
optic optĭcus, a, um
or seu
ossicle ossicŭlum, i n
oval ovālis, e

P

palate palātum, i n
palatine palatĭnus, a, um
palatini (veli) palatĭnus, a, um
pancreas pancreas, ātis n
pancreatis pancreas, ātis n
parapharyngeal parapharyngeālis, e
paravesical paravesicālis, e
parenchyma parenchŷma, ātis n
parietal parietālis, e
part pars, partis f
pectoral pectorālis, e
pelvis pelvis, is f
pelvic pelvĭcus, a, um
permanent (tooth) permānens, ntis (dens)
peroneal peronēus, a, um
petrosal petrōsus, a, um
phalanx phalanx, ngis f
pharynx pharynx, ngis m
plane planum, i n
plant planta, ae f
plexus plexus, us m
pollex, pollicis (thumb) pollex, ĭcis m
posterior posterior, ius
preoccipital preoccipitālis, e
process processus, us m
prominent promĭnens, ntis
proper proprius, a, um
pterygoid pterygoideus, a, um
pulp pulpa, ae f
pulvinar pulvĭnar, āris n
pyramide pyrāmis, ĭdis f

R

radix radix, ĭcis f
rectum rectum, i n
region regio, ōnis f
renal renālis, e
respiratory respiratorius, a um
rete rete, is n
retina retĭna, ae f
rhomboid rhomboideus, a, um
rib costa, ae f
right dexter, tra, trum
ring-shaped (= anular) anulāris, e
root, radix radix, ĭcis f
rotator (rotating muscle) (mus-cŭlus) rotātor, ōris m
round see around

S

sacral sacrālis, e
salivary salivarius, a, um
saphenous saphēnus, a, um
segment segmentum, i n
semilunar semilunāris, e
septum septum, i n
short brevis, e
sinus sinus, us m
simple simplex, ĭcis
skin cutis, is f
skull cranium, i n
small parvus, a, um
smaller minor, minus
soft mollis, e
sole planta, ae f
space spatium, i n
sphenoidal sphenoidālis, e
splanchnic splanchnĭcus, a, um
spleen lien, ēnis m
spur calcar, āris n
squamous squamōsus, a, um
sternal sternālis, e
sternum sternum, i n
stomach gaster, tris f
stroma stroma, ātis n
sublingual sublinguālis, e
submandibular submandibulāris, e
superficial superficiālis, e
superior, upper superior, ius

supraorbital supraorbitālis, e
suprapleural suprapleurālis, e
surface facies, ēi f
suture sutūra, ae f
system systēma, ātis n

T

tail cauda, ae f
tegmen tegmen, ĩnis n
temporal temporālis, e
tendon tendo, ĩnis m
tensor (straining muscle) (muscūlus) tensor, ōris m
term termīnus, i m
thalamus thalāmus, i m
thigh femur, ōris n
third tertius, a, um
thoracic thoracīcus, a, um
thorax thorax, ācis m
through per (Acc.)
thyroid thyr(e)oideus, a, um
tissue textus, us m
to ad (Acc.)
tongue lingua, ae f
tooth dens, dentis m
tip apex, ĩcis m
transverse transversus, a, um
tree arbor, ōris f
trochanter trochanter, ēris m
true verus, a, um
trunk truncus, i m

tubercle tubercūlum, i n
tympanic tympanīcus, a, um

U

under infra (Acc.); sub (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”, Abl., when answering the question “where?”)
upper superior, ius
upper jaw, maxilla maxilla, ae f
ureter urēter, ēris m
use usus, us m

V

vein vena, ae f
velum (curtain) velum, i n
vena (vein) vena, ae f
venae see vena
venous venōsus, a, um
ventricle vertricūlus, i m
vertebra vertēbra, ae f
vertebral vertebrālis, e
vessel vas, vasis n
vomer vomer, ēris m

W

wall paries, ētis m
wandering migrans, ntis
wisdom sapientia, ae f

Z

zygomatic zygomatīcus, a, um

Part III. PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

LESSON 8

INTRODUCTION TO THE LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

The words pharmacist, pharmaceutical, pharmacy etc have in their origin the ancient Greek word *pharmacon* that is drug, medicine. Historically, the names of drugs and their component parts as well as the names of drug forms and some other pharmaceutical terms, especially in medical prescriptions, are given in Latin. Nowadays, the use of Latin in the pharmaceutical practice of every country depends on national tradition and other factors. Namely, the tradition of using Latin both in the drugs names and medical prescriptions lasts in Russia, Republic of Belarus, Ukraine and some other European countries.

To the Latin pharmaceutical terms belong:

1. Names of drugs: *Amidopyrīnum* (amidopyrin), *Corvalōlum* (corvalol), *Streptocīdum* (streptocide).

2. Names of medical plants: *Belladonna* (belladonna), *Digitālis* (foxglove), *Quercus* (oak).

3. Names of chemical elements: *Kalium* (potassium), *Oxygenium* (oxygen), *Sulfur* (sulphur).

4. Adjectives: *Mentha piperīta* (pepper mint), *Species antiasthmaticae* (anti-asthmatic species), *Suppositoria vaginalia* (vaginal suppositories).

5. Names of the drug forms: *Unguentum Tetracyclīni* (ointment of tetracycline), *Tabulettae Myelosāni* (tablets of myelosan), *Tinctūra Menthae* (tincture of mint).

6. Names of the parts of medical plants: *Tinctūra radīcis Valeriānae* (tincture of valerian root), *Herba Valeriānae* (herb of valerian), *Flores Chamomillae* (flowers of matricary).

7. Supplementary nouns and adjectives (mainly in medical prescriptions): *dosis* (dose), *numērus* (number), *talis* (such).

Now let us systematize the use of capital and small letters in the Latin pharmaceutical terms.

The capital letter is used:

1. In the names of drugs: *Codeīnum* (codeine), *Furacilīnum* (furacilin), *Validōlum* (validol).

2. In the names of medical plants: *Calendūla* (calendula), *Eucalyptus* (eucalyptus), *Frangūla* (buckhorn).

3. In the names of chemical elements: *Ferrum* (iron), *Oxygenium* (oxygen), *Zincum* (zinc).

Attention! Nouns of these three groups are written with capital letter in the dictionary form too: *Codeīnum*, i n; *Calendūla*, ae f; *Ferrum*, i n.

4. As the first letter of the names of the drug form, if this name is the first in the multiword term: Linimentum Streptocīdi (liniment of streptocide), Species antiasthmaticae (antiasthmatic species), Tinctūra Valeriānae (tincture of valerian).

5. As the first letter of the names of the plant component, if this name is the first in the multiword term: Herba Valeriānae (herb of valerian), Flores Chamomillae (flowers of matricary), Folia Menthae piperītae (mint pepper leaves).

The small letter is used:

1. In adjectives both in the structure of the term and in the dictionary form:

Mentha **piperīta** (piper mint) — piperītus, a, um;

Acīdum **acetylsalicylicum** (acetylsalicylic acid) — acetylsalicylicus, a, um.

2. In the drug form names or the plant component names being not the first in the term structure as well as in the dictionary form of these names:

Acīdum acetylsalicylicum in **tabulettis** (acetylsalicylic acid in tablets) — tabuletta, ae f.

Decoctum **corticis** Quercus (decoction of oak bark) — cortex, icis m.

3. If the drug form name or the plant component name is used without drug names:

unguenta et linimenta (ointments and liniments); solutio ad usum externum (solution for external use); pulvĕres compositi (compound powders); folia et flores (leaves and flowers); radix et rhizōma (root and rhizome).

4. In constructions with a preposition indicating prescription, order of drug use or way of storage:

Solutio Furacilīni ad **usum externum** (solution of furacilin for external use); Tabulettae contra **tussim** (tablets for cough); Thea medicinālis pro **infantibus** (medicinal tea for children); Mixtio pro **inhalationibus** in **vitro nigro** (mixture for inhalations in dark glass).

Some other peculiarities of using capital or small letter in pharmaceutical terms will be further described in the subsequent parts of this textbook.

Every drug is produced in a physical form most adequate for use. Traditionally, three main forms are used: solid, semisolid and liquid.

Solid forms:

Dragées (**dragée**, a French word which is used without latinization in Plural and hasn't any Latin dictionary form) — dragees

Granūla (**granulum, i n**) — granules of different form, containing drugs

Pilūlae (**pilūla, ae f**) — pills, small balls with drug

Pulvĕres (**pulvis, ěris m**) — powders

Species (**species, ěrum f**, only Plural form) — species, mixture of different parts of medicinal plants

Tabulettae (**tabuletta, ae f**) — tablets

Theae (**thea, ae f**) — teas

Semisolid forms

Emplastra (**emplastrum, i n**) — plasters
Pastae (**pasta, ae f**) — pastes, thick ointments
Suppositoria (**suppositorium, i n**) — suppositories
Unguenta (**unguentum, i n**) — ointments

Liquid forms

Decocta (**decoctum, i n**) — decoctions
Emulsa (**emulsum, i n**) — emulsions
Extracta (**extractum, i n**) — extracts
Guttae (**gutta, ae f**) — drops (of liquids)
Infūsa (**infūsum, i n**) — infusions
Linimenta (**linimentum, i n**) — liniments
Mixtūrae (**mixtūra, ae f**) — mixtures
Mucilāgines (**mucilāgo, ĩnis f**) — mucilages, liquids containing mucous substances

Olea (**oleum, i n**) — oils
Sirūpi (**sirūpus, i m**) — syrups
Solutiōnes (**solutio, ōnis f**) — solutions
Tinctūrae (**tinctūra, ae f**) — tinctures

Some other drug forms

Aërosōla (**aërosōlum, i n**) — aerosols
Capsūlae (**capsūla, ae f**) — capsules
Lamellae (=Membranūlae) ophthalmīcae (**lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f**) — ophthalmic films with drug

cortex, ĩcis m — cortex, bark
flos, floris m — flower
folium, i n — leaf
fructus, us m — fruit

herba, ae f — herb
radix, ĩcis f — root
rhizōma, ātis n — rhizome
semen, ĩnis n — seed

The medicinal plant names are mostly nouns of the 1-st declension:

Chamomilla, ae f — matricary Frangūla, ae f — buckhorn.

Some names are nouns of the 2-nd declension:

Leonūrus, i m — motherwort Millefolium, i n — milfoil.

Less numerous are nouns of the 3-rd declension:

Digitālis, is f — foxglove Adōnis, ĩdis m, f — Adonis.

Very rarely nouns of the 4-th declension are used: Quercus, us f — oak.

One should remember that names of trees are always feminine:

Eucalyptus, i f — eucalyptus Quercus, us f — oak.

Some plant names consist of a noun and an adjective:

Mentha piperīta — pepper mint Adonis vernālis — spring adonis.

The medical plant names occur:

1. In the names of liquid drug forms: Tinctūra Valeriānae — tincture of valerian; Decoctum corticis Quercus — decoction of oak bark.

2. In the labels of different packages containing the components of medicinal plants: Folia Urticae — leaves of nettle; Semen Lini — seed of flax

As a component of the medical prescription:

Recīpe: Extracti Aloēs fluīdi 1 ml — Take: Liquid extract of aloe 1 ml

Recīpe : Corticis Crataegi 30,0 — Take: Cortex of hawthorn 30,0.

As we see, the name of the plant component is always placed before the plant name.

The one-word drug names usually consist of a noun root, a suffix (-īn- is the most common, then follow suffixes -ōl- and -īd-), and, finally, the most common ending — um:

Codeīnum — codein; Dibazōlum — dibazol; Saluzīdum — saluzid.

In the drug names are widely used specific Greek and Latin noun roots expressing certain pharmaceutical information. Knowledge of these morphological elements of most common usage enables to write correctly complicated drug names with a correct spelling, what is one of the main tasks of learning the pharmaceutical part of our subject. Let you memorize the first part of these morphological elements:

Morphological root	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent
-cyclin-	antibiotics-tetracycline	Tetracyclīnum	tetracycline
-cyclo-	making an effect on the metabolic processes	Cycloserīnum	cycloserin
-menth-	product including mint	Menthōlum	menthol
-mycin-	antibiotics-streptomycin	Monomycīnum	monomycin
-myco-	antimycotic, against fungi	Mycoseptīnum	mycoseptin
-pyr-	influence on the body temperature	Antipyriūnum	antipyrin
-strept-	different pharmaceutical effects	Streptocīdum	streptocide

You should memorize prefixes of Greek origin used in drug name constructing:

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent
-a-, -an- (before a vowel)	denying, removing	Apressīnum Analgīnum	apressin analgin
anti-	acting against	antiasthmaīcus	antiasthmatic
hyper-	increase, elevation	Hyperōlum	hyperol
hypo-	decrease, lowering	Hypothiazīdum	hypothiazid

Every multiword Latin pharmaceutical term begins, as a rule, with a drug **form** name. Then, the **drug** name follows. If the drug form has an adjective, this adjective is the last in the term:

Extractum Crataegi fluīdum — liquid extract of hawthorn

Tabulettae Tetracyclīni obductae — coated tablets of tetracycline.

Sometimes, the drug name is used without a form name, especially if prescription or way of storage is indicated:

Aether pro narcōsi — ether for narcosis

Cycloserīnum in capsūlis — cycloserin in capsules

Somatotropīnum humānum pro injectionībus — human somatotropin for injections

Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis — thyreoidin in tablets.

Latin names of drugs with compound composition can be enclosed into quotation marks or inverted commas. But English equivalents of these names are used without quotation marks or inverted commas, compare:

Aërosōlum «Camphomēnum» — aerosol of camphomen

Suppositoria «Anaesthesōlum» — suppositories of anaesthesol.

You can find in the dictionaries indication with which nouns these specific signs are used.

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

Extractum Leonūri fluīdum; Linimentum Aloës; Rhizōma cum radicībus Valeriānae; Sirūpus ex fructībus Rosae; Solutio «Testosterōnum» pro injectionībus; Suppositoria vaginalia cum Synthomycīno; Tabulettae Aspirīni obductae; Tinctūra foliōrum Eucalypti; Unguentum Dibiomycīni ophthalmīcum.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

antiasthmatic species; coated tablets of tetracycline; decoction of oak bark; tincture of pepper mint; dry extract of belladonna; ether for narcosis; herb of spring adonis; liquid extract of hawthorn; medicinal tea for children; mint pepper leaves; ointment of mycoseptin; powder of foxglove leaves; root and rhizome of valerian; simple and compound powders; tablets of antipyrin; tincture of matricary flowers.

I. Latin–English vocabulary

Aloë, ës f — aloe

Aspirīnum, i n — aspirin

cum (Abl.) — with

Dibiomycīnum, i n — dibiomycine

ex (Abl.) — of

extractum, i n — extract

Eucalyptus, i f — eucalyptus

fluīdus, a um — liquid

folium, i n — leaf

fructus, us m — fruit

injectio, ōnis f — injection

pro (Abl.) — for

radix, icis f — root

rhizōma, ātis n — rhizome

Rosa, ae f — dog-rose, wild rose

sirūpus, i m — syrup

solutio, ōnis f — solution

suppositorium, i n — suppository

Synthomycīnum, i n — synthomycine

tabuletta, ae f — tablet

tinctūra, ae f — tincture

Testosterōnum, i n — testosterone

Leonūrus, i m — motherwort
linimentum, i n — liniment
obductus, a, um — coated
ophthalmīcus, a, um — ophthalmic

unguentum, i n — ointment
vaginālis, e — vaginal
Valeriāna, ae f — valerian

II. English Latin vocabulary

adonis — Adōnis, ĩdis f
antiasthmatic — antiasthmaticūcus, a, um
antipyrin — Antipyrīnum, i n
bark — cortex, ĩcis m
belladonna — Belladonna, ae f
children — infantes, ium m, f
coated — obductus, a, um
compound — composĭtus, a, um
decoction — decoctum, i n
dry — siccus, a, um
ether — aether, ěris m
extract — extractum, i, n
flower — flos, floris m
for — pro (+Abl.)
foxglove — Digitālis, is f
herb — herba, ae f
hawthorn — Crataegus, i f
leaf — folium, i n
liquid — fluīdus, a, um

matricary — Chamomilla, ae f
medicinal — medicinālis, e
mint — Mentha, ae f
mycoseptin — Mycoseptīnum, i n
narcosis — narcōsis, is f
oak — Quercus, us f
ointment — unguentum, i n
pepper — piperĭtus, a, um
powder — pulvis, ěris m
rhizome — rhizōma, ātis n
root — radix, ĩcis f
simple — simplex, ĩcis
species — species, ěrum f (only plur.)
spring — vernālis, e
tablet — tabuletta, ae f
tea — thea, ae f
tertracycline — Tetracyclīnum, i n
tincture — tinctūra, ae f
valerian — Valeriāna, ae f

LESSON 9

LATIN IN THE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION. STANDARD VERB FORMS INDICATING ORDER AND INSTRUCTIONS IN MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION. GENERAL RULES OF MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION

The use of Latin medical prescription nowadays is still common in many states of Europe, particularly in the countries of the former USSR including the Republic of Belarus and Russian Federation. That's why the rules of proper use of Latin in medical prescriptions are obligatory in medical university education programs of these states. Latin inscriptions are written on the labels of drug packing, reference books, and in medical prescriptions.

The Latin part of a medical prescription begins with the Imperative form *Recipe: — Take:.* This word is addressed to a pharmacist to use the drug to make the prescription.

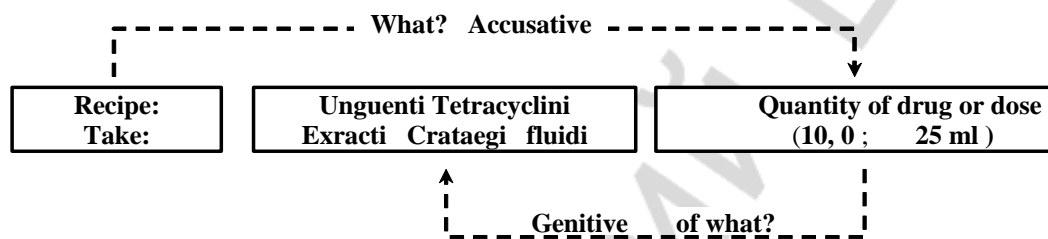
If the drug is produced by a pharmaceutical plant then the prescription includes the name of this drug which is written after the *Recipe:*

Recīpe: Unguenti Tetracyclīni 10,0
 Take: Ointment of tetracycline 10,0
 Recīpe: Extracti Crataegi fluīdi 25 ml
 Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml.

After that in the new line two standard Imperative verb forms follow: *Da* (*Give*) and *Signa* (*Write on the label*) so that the full prescription gets the following forms:

Recīpe: Unguenti Tetracyclīni 10,0 Take: Ointment of tetracycline 10,0
 Da. Signa: Give. Write on the label:
 Recīpe: Extracti Crataegi fluīdi 25 ml Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml
 Da. Signa: Give. Write on the label:

One should pay attention to the fact that both the drug form and the drug name after the *Recīpe* are in the Genitive form. This case form depends on the quantity of the drug administered mainly in gram amounts (indicated in decimal points without the abbreviation gr.) and milliliter amounts with the abbreviation ml:



After the standard expression *Signa* — *Write on the label* — goes the signature, where the physician indicates the way of using the drug in the patient's native language.

So — from *Recipe* to *Signa* — that is how the Latin part of the simple prescription, when the drug is kept at a drugstore in the prepared form, is written.

The Imperative verb forms can be substituted (with some exception) by the Conjunctive mode forms. These Conjunctive forms are translated into English with the word combination «let it be»+ Participle II:

Imperative form	English equivalent	Conjunctive form	English equivalent
Adde	Add	Addātur	Let it be added
Da	Give	Detur Dentur tales doses	Let it be given Let such doses be given
Misce	Mix	Misceātur	Let it be mixed
Repēte	Repeat	Repetātur	Let it be repeated
Imperative form	English equivalent	Conjunctive form	English equivalent
Signa	Write on the label	Signētur	Let it be labeled
Sterilīsa!	Sterilize!	Sterilisētur!	Let it be sterilized!

One should remember, that the Imperative form *Recīpe* can never be replaced by the Conjunctive one.

The use of the Imperative or Conjunctive forms depends only on the physician writing out the medical prescription. As to students, they are to be able to write correctly the grammar form of an order or an instruction according to the initial Latin or English verb form.

Sometimes the physician asks the pharmacist to prepare a drug in the pharmacy. In this case, he writes down all components of this drug. Such a prescription is called a complex one. Naturally, in such prescription the physician indicates some components to be mixed: *Misce* — *Mix*. He can also define more precisely, for what purpose the mixing is necessary — that is for making some drug form. In this case, two forms are used: *fiat* for the nouns in the Singular and *fiant* for the nouns in the Plural:

Misce, fiat pulvis — Mix to make a powder

Misce, fiant suppositoria vaginalia — Mix to make vaginal suppositories.

One should remember, that the Imperative form *Misce* only is used in the combination with the forms *fiat* and *fiant*.

Sometimes, the physician indicates in which form and in what amount the drug is to be prepared. In this case, he writes down these standard forms:

Da (Dentur) tales doses numēro ... in tabulettis (ampullis, capsūlis etc.) — Give such doses (Let such doses be given) in the amount ... in tablets (ampoules, capsules etc.).

If two or more components are taken in the same amount, the dose is indicated only after the latter one, and the adverb *ana* (*of each*) is written before this amount:

Recīpe:	Cortīcis Frangūlae	Take:	Cortex of buckthorn
	Foliōrum Urtīcae ana 15,0		Leaves of nettle of each 15,0

Now, let's see some complex medical prescriptions with different standard phrases:

Recīpe:	Sulfadimezīni	Take:	Sulfadimezin
	Streptocīdi		Streptocide
	Synthomycīni ana 1,0		Synthomycin of each 1,0
	Misce, fiat pulvis		Mix to make a powder
	Detur		Let it be given
	Signētur:		Let it be labeled:

Recīpe: Euphyllīni 0,2
 Butyri Cacāo 2,0
 Misce, fiat suppositorium
 Da tales doses numēro 6
 Signa:

Take: Euphyllin
 Cocoa oil 2,0
 Mix to make a suppository
 Give such doses in the amount 6
 Write on the label:

Sometimes, the amount of oils or other liquids can be indicated in drops. The number of drops is written in Roman figures. If one drop is indicated, so the Accusative Singular form *guttam* is used, if more than one, the Accusative plural form *guttas*:

Recīpe: Olei Menthae piperītae guttam I

Take: Mint pepper oil I drop

Recīpe: Olei Eucalypti guttas V

Take: Eucalyptus oil V drops

In some cases, the physician doesn't indicate the dosage of a complex prescription component and lets the pharmacist determine the quantity of this component on his own. In this case, the standard expression *quantum satis* — *in sufficient amount* — is used:

Recīpe: Chinosōli 0,03
 Acīdi borīci 0,3
 Tannīni 0,06
 Olei Cacāo quantum satis,
 fiat suppositorium vagināle
 Da tales doses numēro 6
 Signa:

Take: Chinosol 0,03
 Boric acid 0,3
 Tannin 0,06
 Cocoa oil in sufficient amount to
 make vaginal suppository
 Give such doses in the amount 6
 Write on the label:

1. Every new line begins with the capital letter.
2. Every first letter of the following new line is written strictly under the first letter of the previous one.
3. If the prescription text is to be continued in the next line, the first letter in the next line should begin under the fourth letter of the previous one.
4. Any correction in the prescription text is forbidden.

Morphological roots	Latin examples	English equivalents
-anth-	Galanthamīnum, i n Helianthus, i m	Galanthamin sunflower
-eph-, -ephedr-, -phedr-	Ephatīnum, i n Ephedrīnum, i n Theophedrīnum, i n	ephatin ephedrine theophedrin
-glyc(y)-	Glycerīnum, i n Corglycōnum, i n Glycyrrhīza, ae f Sed: Glucōsum, i n	glycerin corglycon licorice But: glucose
-phyll-	Euphyllīnum, i n Platyphyllīnum, i n	euphylline platyphylline

-phyt-	Phytīnum, i n Phytolysīnum, i n	phytin phytolysin
-stroph-	Strophanthus, i m Strophosānum, i n	strophanthus strophosan
-the(o)-	Theobromīnum, i n Theophyllīnum, i n	theobromine theophylline

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:

Capsūlae Phytomenadiōni; Emulsum olei Helianthi; Granūla Glycyrāmi; Pulvis Phytīni pro infantibus; Solutio Corglycōni in ampullis; Solutio Glucōsi pro injectionibus; Suppositoria cum Euphyllīno; Tabulettae «Theophedrīnum»; Theophyllīnum in tabulettis.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:

aerosol of ephatin; dry (liquid) extract of licorice; glyceric solution of ichthyol; oily solution of phytomenadion; pectoral species; tincture of strophanthus; sunflower oil for emulsion; suppositories with theophyllin; sublingual tablets of glycin.

3. Write down the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in medical prescription; translate the texts of medical prescriptions into Latin:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. Take: Soluble streptocide 5,0
Solution of glucose
10 % — 100 ml
Mix. Let it be sterilized!
Give. Write on the label:</p> | <p>2. Take: Theophylline 0,2
Cocoa oil 2,0
Mix to make a rectal
suppository
Give. Write on the label:</p> |
| <p>3. Take: Tincture of srophanthus 5 ml
Tincture of lily of the valley
Tincture of valerian of each 10 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labeled:</p> | <p>4. Take: Root of althea
Root of licorice
Seed of flax of each 10,0
Leaves of eucalyptus 2,5
Mix to make a species
Give. Write on the label:</p> |
| <p>5. Take: Solution of strophanthine
0,05 % — 1 ml
Give such doses in the amount 10
in ampoules
Write on the label:</p> | <p>6. Take: Oily solution of nitroglycerin
1 % — 0,0005
Let such doses be given in
the amount 20 in capsules
Let it be labeled:</p> |
| <p>7. Take: Chloroform
Sunflower oil of each 20 ml
Mix to make a liniment
Let it be given
Let it be labeled:</p> | <p>8. Take: Ichthyol 3,0
Vaseline up to 30,0
Mix to make an ointment
Give.
Write on the label:</p> |

I. Latin–English vocabulary

ampulla, ae f — ampoule
capsūla, ae f — capsule

infans, ntis m, f — child
oleum, i n — oil

Corglycōnum, i n — corglycon
 cum (Abl.) — with
 emulsum, i n — emulsion
 Euphyllīnum, i n — euphylline
 Glycyrāmum, i n — glycyram
 Glucōsum, i n — glucose
 granūlum, i n — granule
 Helianthus, i m — sunflower
 in (Abl.) — in

Phytīnum, i n — phytin
 Phytomenadiōnum, i n —
 phytomenadion
 pro (Abl.) — for
 pulvis, ěris m — powder
 solutio, ōnis f — solution
 tabuletta, ae f — tablet
 Theophedrinum, i n — theophedrine
 Theophyllīnum, i n — theophylline

II. English — Latin vocabulary

aerosol — aērosōlum, i n
 althea — Althaea, ae f
 amount — numērus, i m
 ampoule — ampulla, ae f
 capsule — capsūla, ae f
 chloroform — Chloroformium, i n
 cocoa — Cacāo (without a dictionary form)
 dose — dosis, is f
 dry — siccus, a, um
 extract — extractum, i n
 ephatin — «Ephatīnum»
 (Ephatīnum, i n)
 emulsion — emulsum, i n
 eucalyptus — Eucalyptus, i f
 flax — Linum, i n
 for — pro (Abl.)
 glucose — Glucōsum, i n
 glyceric — glycerinōsus, a, um
 glycin — Glycīnum, i n
 ichthyol — Ichthyōlum, i n
 leaf — folium, i n
 licorice — Glycyrrhīza, ae f
 lily of the valley — Convallaria, ae f
 liniment — linimentum, i n

nitroglycerin — Nitroglycerīnum, i n
 of each — ana
 oil — oleum, i n
 oily — oleōsus, a, um
 pectoral — pectorālis, e
 phytomenadion — Phytomenadiōnum, i n
 rectal — rectālis, e
 root — radix, ĩcis f
 such — talis, e
 seed — semen, ĩnis n
 soluble — solubīlis, e
 solution — solutio, ōnis f
 species — species, ěrum f (only Plural)
 streptocide — Streptocīdum, i n
 suppository — suppositorium, i n
 strophanthine — Strophanthīnum, i n
 strophanthus — Strophanthus, i m
 sublingual — sublinguālis, e
 sunflower — Helianthus, i m
 tincture — tinctūra, ae f
 theophylline — Theophyllīnum, i n
 up to — ad (Acc.)
 Vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n
 with — cum (Abl.)

L
 E
 S
 S

The Accusative of some pharmaceutical forms is used only in a simple medical prescription. This is the way of prescribing tablets, dragees, suppositories, ophthalmic films, and sponges for different medical purposes, aerosols. The name of these pharmaceutical forms is written in the Accusative Singular or Plu-

ral. The Latin drug name in the Nominative form is sometimes enclosed in inverted commas or quotation marks, which are omitted in the English text, where in this case the common construction with preposition *of* is used. The amount of the prescribed drug is hereby not indicated in grams or in milliliters but is expressed by the word *numĕrus* (*number*) in the Ablative form (*numĕro*) and a common figure. In the second line the standard verb forms are written:

Recĭpe:	Tabulettas «Antistrumĭnum» numĕro 50	Take:	Tablets of antistrumin number 50
	Detur		Let it be given
	Signetur:		Let it be labelled:
Recĭpe:	Tabulettas Aloĕs obductas 0,05 numĕro 20	Take:	Coated tablets of aloe 0,05 number 20
	Da		Give
	Signa:		Write on the label:

As in English drug names inverted commas or quotation marks are not used, it is impossible when translating to find out which Latin equivalent drug name with these specific signs is to be written. That is why when translating from English into Latin we have to consult the dictionary and to find out whether the drug name is enclosed in inverted commas or quotation marks or not. So, if we see in the dictionary: Benspar — «Benspĕrum» (Benspĕrum, i n), we know, how the Latin drug name is to be written correctly, for example:

Take:	Capsules of benspar number 100	Recĭpe:	Capsŭlas «Benspĕrum» numĕro 100
	Give		Da. Signa:
	Write on the label:		

The drug prescription in tablets may proceed in three forms.

In the first case after *Recĭpe* the Accusative Singular form *Tabulettam* is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and the dose. In the second line of the prescription the instruction *Da (Dentur) tales doses numĕro... in tabulettis* is written and after that the standard verb form *Signa (Signĕtur)* follows:

Recĭpe:	Tabulettam Paracetamŏli 0,3 Da tales doses numĕro 6 in tabulettis	Take:	Tablet of paracetamol 0,3 Give such doses in the amount 6 in tablets
	Signa:		Write on the label:

In the second case after *Recĭpe* the Accusative Plural form *Tabulettas* is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and figures indicating the amount of active medical substance of a tablet and, finally, the dosage expressed by the *numĕro* and a figure:

Recĭpe:	Tabulettas Paracetamŏli 0,3 numĕro 6	Take:	Tablets of paracetamol 0,3 number 6
	Da		Give
	Signa:		Write on the label:

But the same drug can be prescribed in a traditional form indicating the drug quantity, and that is the third way of drug prescribing in the tablet form. In this case after *Reciĥpe* the drug name and its dose follow. In the second line the instruction *Da (Dentur) tales doses numěro 6 in tabulettis* and, finally, the standard form *Signa (Signětur)* are written:

Reciĥpe: Paracetamōli 0,3	Take: Paracetamol 0,3
Da tales doses numěro 6 in tabulettis	Give such doses in the amount 6 in tablets
Signa:	Write on the label:

It is absolutely imperative that every doctor is to know all the ways of writing out medical prescriptions. But the choice of a prescription form is up to him.

Dragees (as the equivalent in Latin pharmaceutical terminology the French word *dragěes* is used) are now prescribed mainly in the Plural form. From the grammar point of view, the *dragěes* is considered as Accusative depending on the word *Reciĥpe*, but as a French word, it has no case and dictionary form. The prescription regulations for dragees are the following. After the *Reciĥpe* follows the form *Dragěes*, the drug name in inverted commas (quotation marks) or in the Genitive form and the Ablative case *numěro* with a figure indicating the dose:

Reciĥpe: Dragěes «Undevĭtum» numěro 30	Take: Dragees of undevit number 30
Detur	Let it be given
Signetur:	Let it be labelled:

One should add that sometimes, some other order of dragees prescription is used. In this case, after *Reciĥpe* the singular form *Dragěe* is written with the drug name in the Genitive and a figure indicating the dose. In the second line follows the phrase *Da (Dentur tales doses) numěro...:*

Reciĥpe: Dragěe Diazolĭni 0,05	Take: Dragee of diazolin 0,05
Da tales doses numěro 20	Give such doses in the amount 20
Signa:	Write on the label:

Ophthalmic films are absorbable gelatin films containing drug substances. They are used instead of ophthalmic drops when keeping such a film under the eyelid at night.

The ophthalmic films are usually prescribed with the preposition *cum*. The prescription regulations for the ophthalmic films are the following. The verb *Reciĥpe* is followed by the Accusative Plural forms *Lamellas* (or *Membranŭlas*) *ophthalmĭcas*, the preposition *cum* with the name of the active pharmaceutical component in the Ablative and the form *numěro* with a figure. In the second and third lines the standard phrases *Da (Dentur) tales doses numěro ...* and *Signa (Signětur)* are written:

Reciĕpe: Lamellas ophthalmicas cum Take: Ophthalmic films with
 Novocaĭno numĕro 8 novocain number 8
 Da. Signa: Give. Write on the label:

A pharmaceutical suppository is a drug in the form of a round or conical tablet which is solid at room temperature and semisolid at body temperature. They distinguish the rectal suppository and the vaginal one. In the Accusative case, suppositories are prescribed as medical sponges:

1. *Reciĕpe* is followed by the Accusative Plural form *Suppositoria* with the adjective *vaginalia (rectalia)* or without these adjectives, the drug name in inverted commas and the *numĕro* with a figure. The second and the third lines contain the standard phrases *Da (Detur)* and *Signa (Signĕtur)*:

Reciĕpe: Suppositoria vaginalia Take: Vaginal suppositories of osarbon
 «Osarbĕnum» numĕro 10 number 10
 Da. Signa: Give. Write on the label:

2. *Reciĕpe* is followed by the Accusative Plural form *Suppositoria*, the preposition *cum* and the active pharmaceutical component in the Ablative, a figure indicating the amount of this component, the form *numĕro* with a figure. After that the standard forms *Da (Detur)* and *Signa (Signĕtur)* follow in the next lines:

Reciĕpe: Suppositoria cum Take: Suppositories with
 Diprophyllĭno 0,5 numĕro 30 diprophylline 0,5 number 30
 Detur Let it be given
 Signĕtur: Let it be labelled:

An aerosol contains the drug in a gaseous form which is contained in a small cylinder provided with a valve.

Aerosols are prescribed in the Accusative Singular form in two ways:

1. *Reciĕpe* is followed by the Accusative Singular form *Aĕrosĕlum*, its name in inverted commas and the *numĕro* with a figure. After that the standard forms *Da (Detur)* and *Signa (Signĕtur)* follow in the next lines:

Reciĕpe: Aĕrosĕlum «Proposĕlum» Take: Aerosol of proposol number 2
 numĕro 2 Give
 Da Write on the label:
 Signa:

2. *Reciĕpe* is followed by the Accusative Singular form *Aĕrosĕlum* and its name in inverted commas or quotation marks. In the second line, the standard phrase *Da (Detur) tales doses numĕro* is written:

Reciĕpe: Aĕrosĕlum «Proposĕlum» Take: Aerosol of proposol
 Da tales doses numĕro 2 Give such doses in the amount 2
 Signa: Write on the label:

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
---------------------	---------	----------------	---------------------

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-aesthes-, -aesth- , -asthes-, -esthes-	correction of sensitivity	Anaesthesīnum, i n Aesthocīnum, i n Bellasthesīnum, i n Pavesthesīnum, i n	anaesthesin aesthocin bellasthesin pavesthesin
-cain-	anesthetic effect	Novocai-num, i n Ultracai-num, i n	novocain ultracain
-camph-	influence on the central and peripheral nervous system	Bromcamphōra, ae f Camphonium, i n	bromcamphora camphonium
-erythr-, -eryth-, -ery-	1) containing erythromycin 2) produced from erythro- cytes	Erythromycīnum, i n Eryhaemum, i n Erycyclīnum, i n	erythromycin eryhaem erycycline
-haem-	haemostatic or haematopoiesis stimulating effect	haemostatīcus, a, um Haemostimulīnum, i n	haemostatic haemostimulin
-oestr-	female genital hormones	Oestradiolum, i n Synoestrolum, i n	oestradiol synoestrol
-test-	male genital hormones	Medrotestrōnum, i n Testosterōnum, i n	medrotestron testosteron
-thym-	immunity stimulators pro- duced by thymus	Thymalīnum, i n Thymoptīnum, i n	thymalin thymoptin
-thyr-	correction of thyroid func- tion	Thyroidīnum, i n Rifathyroīnum, i n	thyroidin rifathyroin

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:

Ampullae cum pulvĕre Rifathyroīni; Granūla Erycyclīni in capsūlis; In-
jectiōnes Thymalīni pro adultis; Lamellae ophthalmīcae cum Dicaīno; Pulvis Dicaīni
crystallisātus; Solutio Pyromecaīni pro infusionībus intravenōsis; Spongia haemo-
stātica in vitro vitreo; Suppositoria «Anaesthesolum»; Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:

anaesthesin for narcosis; camphoric spirit for trituration; eryhaem in vitre-
ous phials; haemostatic plaster of feracryl; oily solution of synoestrol in the am-
poules; testoenat for injections; tablets of pregoestrol; solution of thymogen for
intranasal introduction.

**3. Give the dictionary form of the nouns and the adjectives as well as
standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in medical prescription;
translate into Latin:**

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Take: Coated tablets of allochol
for children number 25
Give. Write on the label: | 2. Take: Capsules of oestradiol 0,14
number 12
Give. Write on the label: |
| 3. Take: Thyreoidin 0,05
Let such doses be given in
the amount 50 in tablets
Let it be labelled: | 4. Take: Solution of haemophobin 5 ml
Give such doses in the
amount 10 in ampoules
Write on the label: |

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>5. Take: Erynit 0,1
Give such doses in the amount 20
in tablets
Write on the label:</p> <p>7. Take: Vaginal suppositories with
synthomycin 0,15
number 10
Give. Write on the label:</p> <p>9. Take: Haemostatic collagenic sponge
Let such doses be given
in the amount 4 in plastic
packets
Let it be labelled:</p> | <p>6. Take: Ophthalmic films with
neomycin number 8
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:</p> <p>8. Take: Aerosol of camphomen
Give such doses in the
amount 2
Write on the label:</p> <p>10. Take: Anaesthesin 2,5
Cocoa oil in sufficient amount
to make a rectal suppository
Let such doses be given
in the amount 50 in tablets
Let it be labelled:</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

I. Latin–English vocabulary

adultus, a, um	— adult
ampulla, ae f	— ampoule
Anaesthesolum, i n	— anaesthesol
capsula, ae f	— capsule
crystallisatus, a, um	— crystal
Dicainum, i n	— dicain
Erycyclinum, i n	— erycyclin
granulum, i n	— granule
haemostaticus, a, um	— haemostatic
infusio, ōnis f	— infusion
intravenosus, a, um	— intravenous
lamella, ae f	— film (ophthalmic)
ophthalmicus, a, um	— ophthalmic
Pyromecainum, i n	— pyromecain
pulvis, ěris m	— powder
Rifathyroinum, i n	— rifathyroin
spongia, ae f	— sponge
Thymalinum, i n	— thymalin
Thyreoidinum, i n	— thyreoidin
vitrum, i n	— glass
vitreus, a, um	— vitreous

II. English–Latin vocabulary

aerosol	— aërosolum, i n
alcohol	— «Allocholum» (Allocholum, i n)
ampoule	— ampulla, ae f
anaesthesin	— Anaesthesinum, i n
camphomen	— «Camphomenum» (Camphomenum, i n)
camphoric	— camphoratus, a, um
collagenic	— collagenicus, a, um
eryhaem	— Eryhaemum, i n
erynit	— Erynitum, i n

erythromycin	— Erythromycīnum, i n
feracryl	— «Feracrȳlum» (Feracrȳlum, i n)
glass	— vitrum, i n
haemophobin	— Haemophobīnum, i n
haemostatic	— haemostatīcus, a, um
in sufficient amount	— quantum satis
intranasal	— intranasālis, e
introduction	— introductio, ōnis f
narcosis	— narcōsis, is f
neomycin	— Neomycīnum, i n
number	— numērus, i m
oestradiol	— Oestradiōlum, i n
oily	— oleōsus, a, um
packet	— fascicūlus, i m
phial	— flaco, ōnis m
plaster	— emplasrum, i n
plastic	— polyaethylenīcus, a, um
pregoestrol	— Praegoestrōlum, i n
rectal	— rectālis, e
spirit (alcohol)	— spirītus, us m
sponge	— spongia, ae f
synthomycin	— Synthomycīnum, i n
synoestrol	— Synoestrōlum, i n
testoenat	— Testoenātum, i n
trituration	— trituratō, ōnis f
thymogen	— Thymogēnum, i n
vaginal	— vaginālis, e
vitreous	— vitreus, a, um

L

E

S

Latin names of chemical elements are, as a rule, nouns of the second declension and of the neutral gender beginning always with a capital letter:

Aluminium, i n — aluminum Ferrum, i n — iron Zincum, i n — zinc.

Nouns of two chemical elements are exception from this rule:

Phosphorus, i m — phosphorus

Sulfur, ūris n — sulphur (in American English the spelling is sulfur).

Some elements have double names:

fluorine — Fluōrum, i n = Phthorum, i n

magnesium — Magnium, i n = Magnesium, i n.

See the chemical element names of most common usage in the table below:

Latin chemical symbols	Latin names	English names
Al	Aluminium	aluminium
Ag	Argentum	silver
As	Arsenīcum	arsenic

Au	Aurum	gold
Ba	Barium	barium
Bi	Bismūthum	bismuth
Br	Bromum	bromine
Ca	Calcium	calcium
C	Carboneum	carbon
Cl	Chlorum	chlorine
Cu	Cuprum	copper
Fe	Ferrum	iron
F	Fluōrum seu Phthorum	fluorine
Hg	Hydrargyrum	mercury
H	Hydrogenium	hydrogen
I	Iōdum	iodine
K	Kalium	potassium
Li	Lithium	lithium
Mg	Magnium seu Magnesium	magnesium
Mn	Mangānum	manganese
Na	Natrium	sodium
N	Nitrogenium	nitrogen
O	Oxygenium	oxygen
Pb	Plumbum	lead
P	Phosphōrus	phosphorus
Si	Silicium	silicon
S	Sulfur	sulphur (sulfur)
Zn	Zincum	zinc

Every Latin acid name consists of the noun *acīdum* (*acid*) and an adjective of the first group with the ending **-um** in accordance with the rules of grammar agreement. One should, hereby, pay attention, that in the dictionary form, both nouns and adjective are written with a small letter but in the combination with adjectives the noun *acīdum* is written with a capital letter:

acīdum, i n — acid borīcus, a, um — boric **but:** Acīdum borīcum.

There are three variants of Latin acid names. The first two variants cover the names of acids which include oxygen, the last one — the names of acids without oxygen.

In the first variant, when an acid contains the greatest amount of oxygen, the suffix **-ic-** and the ending **-um** are added to the stem of a chemical element. English equivalents of these Latin adjectives have the suffix **-ic-** as a final element:

Latin name of chemical element	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	sulfurīcus, a, um	Acīdum sulfurīcum (H ₂ SO ₄)	sulphuric acid

The same way of acid names building is used when names of organic acids are formed:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
lac, lactis n (milk)	lact-	lactīcus, a, um	Acīdum lactīcum	lactic acid

In the second variant when the acid of the same element contains lesser amount of oxygen, the suffix **-os-** is used. In this case English equivalents have the ending **-ous**:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	sulfurōsus, a, um	Acīdum sulfurōsum (H ₂ SO ₃)	sulphurous acid

In the third variant, when an acid doesn't contain oxygen, the prefix **hydro-** and the suffix **-ic-** are added to the stem:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	hydrosulfurīcus, a, um	Acīdum hydro-sulfurīcum (H ₂ S)	hydrosulphuric acid

One should remember that in acid names (as well as in salt names) formed from the noun *Nitrogenium* only a part of the stem is used: **nitr-**:

Acīdum nitricum — nitric acid Acīdum nitrōsum — nitrous acid

Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides consist of two words. The first one is always the Genitive form of a chemical element, then the Nominative form *oxŷdum* (*hydroxŷdum*, *peroxŷdum*) follows:

Zinci oxŷdum — zinc oxide Alumini hydroxŷdum — aluminum hydroxide

Hydrogenii peroxŷdum — hydrogen peroxide.

The names *oxŷdum*, *hydroxŷdum*, *peroxŷdum* are nouns of the neutral gender of the second declension:

oxŷdum, i n hydroxŷdum, i n peroxŷdum, i n.

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
- (a)z- , - (a)zid- , - (a)zin- , - (a)zol- , - (a)zon-	presence of nitrogen in the heterocyclic compounds	Azaleptīnum, i n Phthivazīdum, i n Sulfapyridazīnum, i n Norsulfazōlum, i n Sibazōnum, i n	azaleptin phthivazid sulfapyridazin norsulfazol sibazon
- benz-	presence of benzene ring	Benzohexonium, i n benzoīcus, a, um	benzohexon benzoic
- cyan-	cyanic acid, its anions or a cyan group	Cyanocobalamīnum, i n cyanīdum, i n	cyanocobalamine cyanide

-hydr-, -hyd-	presence of hydrogen, water or a hydroxyl group	Hydrogenium, i n Formaldehydum, i n	hydrogen formaldehyde
-naphth-	products of petroleum	Naphthalanum, i n Naphthyzinum, i n	naphthalan naphthyzin
-oxy-	presence of oxygen and its compounds	Chinoxydinum, i n Oxylinum, i n	chinoxidin oxylidin
-phtha(l)-	derivatives of phthalic acid	Phthalazolum, i n Phthazolum, i n	phthalazol phthazol
-phthor-	presence of fluorine compounds	Phthorocortum, i n Phthoracizinum, i n	phthorocort phthoracizin
-sulf-	presence of sulphur or its derivatives	Norsulfazolum, i n sulfas, ātis m	norsulfazol sulphate
-thi-	presence of sulphur atom in the names of thiosalts and thioacids	Thiopentalum, i n thiosulfas, ātis m	thiopental thiosulphate
-yl-	presence of carbohydrogenic radicals	Benzylpenicillinum, i n salicylicus, a, um	benzylpenicillin salicylic

1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

Acidum arsenicosum anhydricum; Acidum ascorbinicum in dragees; Cyanocobalaminum seu Vitaminum B₁₂; Emplastrum Plumbi simplex; Emulsum Erythrophosphatidi in ampullis; Phthalazolum in tabulettis; Pulvis Magnesii oxydi; Sirupus Aloes cum Ferro; Sulfacylum solubile pro injectionibus; Sensus Hydrocortisoni in flaconibus; Tabulettae Acidi folici; Tabulettae Acidi acetysalicylici enterosolubiles.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

ascorbic acid in dragees; coated tablets of glutamic acid; clear hydrochloric acid; diluted solution of hydrogen peroxide; emulsion of castor oil; granules of furazolidon for children; powder of foxglove leaves; solution of nicotinic acid; solution of soluthizon for intratracheal injection; spirituous solution of iodine for internal use; suspension of aluminium hydroxide; tablets of lipoic acid; thioacetazon in tablets; white powder of sulphadimidine; yellow mercury oxide.

3. Give the dictionary form both of the nouns and the adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in medical prescription; translate the medical prescriptions:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Take: Tablets of phthalazol 0,05
number 20
Give. Write on the label: | 2. Take: Naphthalan ointment 50,0
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: |
| 3. Take: Clear hydrochloric acid 6,0
Distilled water up to 100 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: | 4. Take: Purified sulphur
Peach oil of each 30,0
Let it be mixed
Let it be sterilized!
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: |
| 5. Take: Streptocide
Sulfadimezine | 6. Take: Glutamic acid 1,5
Solution of glucose 25 % |

- Norsulfazol of each 5,0 — 450 ml
 Mix to make the finest powder
 Let it be given
 Let it be labelled:
7. Take: Menthol 0,1
 Zinc oxide
 Boric acid of each 0,5
 Vaseline 10,0
 Mix to make an ointment
 Give
 Write on the label:
9. Take: Ascorbic acid 0,2
 Nicotinic acid
 Riboflavin of each 0,25
 Distilled water up to 100 ml
 Let it be mixed
 Let it be given
 Let it be labelled:
8. Take: Boric acid 5,0
 Zinc oxide
 Wheat starch of each 25,0
 Ointment of naphthalan 45,0
 Mix to make a paste
 Give. Write on the label:
10. Take: Yellow mercury oxide 0,6
 Ichthyol 0,8
 Zinc ointment 20,0
 Mix to make a paste
 Give
 Write on the label:

11. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,015
 Powder of rhubarb root
 Magnesium oxide of each 0,3
 Mix to make a powder
 Give such doses
 in the amount 10
 Write on the label:

12. Take: Salicylic acid
 Lactic acid of each 6,0
 Icy acetic acid 3,0
 Collodium up to 20,0
 Mix
 Give
 Write on the label:

I. Latin–English vocabulary

acetylsalicylicus, a, um	— acetylsalicylic
acidum, i n	— acid
Aloë, ës f	— aloe
anhydricus, a, um	— anhydrous
arsenicōsus, a, um	— arsenous
ascorbinicus, a, um	— ascorbic
Cyanocobalamīnum, i n	— cyanocobalamin
dragée (plur. dragées)	— dragee (plur. dragees)
emplastrum, i n	— plaster
emulsum, i n	— emulsion
enterosolubilis, e	— enteric soluble
Erythrophosphatīdum, i n	— erythrophosphate
Ferrum, i n	— iron
flaco, ōnis m	— phial
folīcus, a, um	— folic
Hydrocortisōnum, i n	— hydrocortisone
Magnesium, i n	— magnesium
Naphthalānum, i n	— naphthalan
Norsulfazōlum, i n	— norsulfazol
oxŷdum, i n	— oxide
Phthalazōlum, i n	— phthalazol
Plumbum, i n	— lead
Riboflavīnum, i n	— riboflavin
Ricīnus, i m	— castor oil plant
seu	— or
simplex, ĩcis	— simple
solubilis, e	— soluble
Streptocīdum, i n	— streptocide
Sulfacŷlum, i n	— sulfacyl
Sulfur, ŷris n	— sulphur
suspensio, ōnis f	— suspension
vitamīnum, i n	— vitamin

II. English–Latin vocabulary

acetic	— acetīcus, a um
acid	— acidum, i n
aluminium	— Aluminium, i n

ascorbic	— ascorbinicus, a, um
boric	— boricus, a, um
castor oil	— Oleum Ricini
castor oil plant	— Ricinus, i m
clear	— purus, a, um
coated	— obductus, a, um
collodium	— Collodium, i n
diluted	— dilutus, a, um
distilled	— destillatus, a, um
dragee (plur. dragees)	— dragée (plur. dragées)
drop	— gutta, ae f
emulsion	— emulsum, i n
finest	— subtilissimus, a, um
foxglove	— Digitalis, is f
furazolidon	— Furazolidonum, i n
glucose	— Glucosum, i n
glutaminic	— glutaminicus, a, um
hydrochloric	— hydrochloricus, a, um
hydrogen	— Hydrogenium, i n
hydroxide	— hydroxydum, i n
ichthyol	— Ichthyolum, i n
icy	— glaciālis, e
internal	— internus, a, um
intratracheal	— intratracheālis, e
iodine	— Iodum, i n
lactic	— lacticus, a, um
lipoic	— lipoicus, a, um
menthol	— Mentholum, i n
mercury	— Hydrargyrum, i n
naphthalan	— Naphthalanum, i n
nicotinic	— nicotinicus, a, um
oxide	— oxydum, i n
paste	— pasta, ae f
peach	— Persicum, i n
peach oil	— Oleum Persicorum
peroxid	— peroxydum, i n
phthalazol	— Phthalazolium, i n
purified	— depuratus, a, um
rhubarb	— Rheum, i n
riboflavin	— Riboflavinum, i n
root	— radix, icis f
salicylic	— salicylicus, a, um
soluthizon	— Soluthizonum, i n
spirituous	— spirituosus, a, um
starch	— Amylum, i n

sulfadimezine	— Sulfadimezīnum, i n
sulphadimidine	— Sulfadimidīnum, i n
sulphur	— Sulfur, ūris n
suspension	— suspensio, ōnis f
thioacetazone	— Thioacetazōnum, i n
up to	— ad (Acc.)
use	— usus, us m
vaseline	— Vaselīnum, i n
water	— aqua, ae f
wheat	— Tritīcum, i n
white	— albus, a, um
yellow	— flavus, a, um
zinc	— Zincum, i n

**L
E
S
S**

Latin names of salts consist of two parts. First goes the Genitive case of a cation (a chemical element name or, more seldom, a drug name), in the second place is the Nominative of an anion. Anion names are always written with a small letter. If we speak of anions derivatives of acids containing oxygen of different degrees, two variants of these anions are distinguished:

1. Names of anions containing the greatest amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-as** in the Nominative and **-ātis** in the Genitive Singular: Na_2SO_4 — Natrii sulfas → sulfas, ātis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na_2SO_4	Natrii sulfas	sulfas, ātis m	sulphate	sodium sulphate
NaNO_3	Natrii nitras	nitras, ātis m	nitrate	sodium nitrate

So, one can very easily find out the correlation between English and Latin anion names of the first group: the English ending **-ate** corresponds to the Latin ending **-as**. In this way we may instantly determine Latin equivalents of English anions without analyzing their chemical composition, including all the anions of organic acids having the ending **-ate** too:

sodium salicylate — Natrii salicylas

testosterone propionate — Testosterōni propiōnas.

2. The names of anions containing lesser amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-is** in the Nominative and **-ītis** in the Genitive Singular: Na_2SO_3 — Natrii sulfis → sulfis, ītis m:

Chemical	Latin name	The anion and	English equiva-	English equivalent
----------	------------	---------------	-----------------	--------------------

symbol of the salt	of the salt	its dictionary form	lent of the anion name	of the salt name
Na ₂ SO ₃	Natrii sulfis	sulfis, ītis m	sulphite	sodium sulphite
NaNO ₂	Natrii nitris	nitris, ītis m	nitrite	sodium nitrite

As you can see, the Latin anion ending **-is** corresponds to the English anion ending **-ite**, and it allows, as it is seen above, to determine any necessary equivalent taking as well into consideration the spelling of each separate word.

The names of anions which don't contain oxygen are neutral nouns of the second declension with the suffix **-id-** and the ending **-um**:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na ₂ S	Natrii sulfidum	sulfidum, i n	sulphide	sodium sulphide
NaCl	Natrii chloridum	chloridum, i n	chloride	sodium chloride

So, the complex ending **-idum** of the Latin anions which don't contain oxygen corresponds to the English ending **-ide** in the anions with the similar chemical compound.

Conclusion: if you remember the endings of the three seen above variants of Latin anions and if you know which Latin anion ending corresponds to the English one, you do not need to know the chemical compound of any salt to express correctly both English and Latin salt name.

Latin anion names of basic salts are formed by adding the prefix **sub-** :
 Bismūthi subnītras — basic nitrate of bismuth
 Aluminii subacētās — basic acetate of aluminium.

Two-component Latin names of potassium and sodium salts are written with a hyphen. Each component of such a name is a neutral noun of the second declension. The second component following the hyphen is written with a small letter. In the dictionary form, after the two-component Nominative cases the ending **-i** and the gender sign **n** follow. English equivalents of these terms are written without a hyphen:

Sulfacylum-natrium, i n — sulphacyl sodium
 Benzylpenicillinum- kalium, i n — benzylpenicillin potassium.

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-aeth-	presence of ethyl group	aethylīcus, a, um Aethynālum, i n	ethylic etynal
-lysin-, -lytin-	removing some destructive factor	Phytolysīnum, i n Broncholytīnum, i n	phytolysin broncholytin
-meth-	presence of methyl group	Methylēnum, i n Methylium, i n	methylene methyl
-morph-	analgetics, derivatives of morphine	Apomorphīnum, i n Morpholongum, i n	apomorphin morpholong
-phen-	presence of phenyl group	Phenōlum, i n Phthorophenazīnum, i n	phenol phthorophenazin
-phthi-	antitubercular effect	Phthivazīdum, i n Phthizopyrāmum, i n	ftivazide phthizopyram
-poly-	large number, multitude	polyvitaminōsus, a, um Polyamīnum, i n	multivitaminous polyamin
-thromb-	thrombolytics, against thrombosis	Thrombīnum, i n Thrombocyfīnum, i n	thrombin thrombocytin

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:

Aether stabilisātus pro narcōsi; Barii sulfas pro rentgēno; Cerebrolysīnum in ampullis ad usum parenterālem; Emulsum Benzylī benzoātis medicinālis; Granūla Aethazōli-natrii pro infantibus; Membranūlae ophthalmīcae cum Atropīni sulfāte; Methylēnum coeruleum in capsulis; Phenylī salicylas in tabulettis; Pulvis Phnoxymethylpenicillīni pro suspensiōne; Solutio Aethacidīni lactātis spirituōsa; Species polyvitaminōsae et pectorāles; Tabulettae Calcii orotātis; Theobromīnum-natrium cum Natrii salicylāte; Spirītus aethylīcus rectificātus; Vitamīnum B₆ seu Pyridoxīni hydrochlorīdum.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:

basic acetate of lead; basic nitrate of bismuth with belladonna extract; coated tablets of tetracycline hydrochloride; hypertonic solution of sodium chloride; isotonic solution of sodium chloride; morpholong for intramuscular injections; ointment of copper citrate; ophthalmic films with fibrinolysin; polyethylenoxide for intravenous use; powder of sarcolysin for solution; precipitated calcium carbonate; rectified ethylic spirit; solution of terrilytin for inhalation; suppositories of methyluracil; syrup of broncholytin in phials; tablets of ethylmorphine hydrochloride for adults; tablets of phthivazid.

3. Give the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in medical prescription; translate the medical prescriptions:

1. Take: Tincture of spring pheasant's eye 2. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,001

- herb 180 ml
Amidopyrin 2,0
Sodium bromide 4,0
Codeine phosphate 0,2
Mix
Give
Write on the label:
3. Take: Ethylmorphine hydrochloride 0,1
Vaseline 10,0
Mix to make an ointment
Give
Write on the label:
5. Take: Platyphylline hydrotartrate 0,005
Phenobarbital
Papaverine hydrochloride of each 0,02
Give such doses in the amount 10
Write on the label:
7. Take: Coated tablets of oleandoandomycin phosphate 0,125 number 25
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:
9. Take: Morphine hydrochloride 0,01
Apomorphine hydrochloride 0,05
Diluted hydrochloric acid 1ml
Distilled water up to 2000 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:
11. Take: Menthol
Ethylmorphine hydrochloride of each 200 ml
Sugar 0,03
Mix to make a powder
Give such doses in the amount 10
Write on the label:
- Basic bismuth nitrate
Phenyl salicylate of each 0,25
Mix to make a powder
Give such doses in the amount 10
Write on the label:
4. Take: Rectified ethylic spirit 95 % — 20 ml
Water for injections 100 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:
6. Take: Dimedrol 0,01
Ephedrine hydrochloride 0,1
Peach oil 10 ml
Mint oil I drop
Mix
Give. Write on the label:
8. Take: Ophthalmic films with neomycin sulphate number 10
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:
10. Take: Magnesium carbonate 4,0
Potassium carbonate 5,0
Sodium hydrocarbonate 1,0
Glycerin in sufficient amount
Mix to make a paste
Give
Write on the label:
12. Take: Tincture of althea root 180 ml
Sodium hydrocarbonate
Sodium benzoate of each 5,0
Simple syrup 20,0
Mix. Give
Write on the label:

I. Latin–English vocabulary

Aethacridīnum, i n	—	ethacridine
Aethazōlum-natrium, i n	—	ethazol sodium
aether, ěris m	—	ether
aethylīcus, a, um	—	ethylic
Althaea, ae f	—	althea
Apomorphīnum, i n	—	apomorphine
Atropīnum, i n	—	atropin
benzoas, ātis m	—	benzoate
Benzylum, i n	—	benzyl
Calcium, i n	—	calcium
Cerebrolysīnum, i n	—	cerebrolysin
coeruleus, a, um	—	blue
hydrochlorīdum, i n	—	hydrochloride
lactas, ātis m	—	lactate
medicinālis, e	—	medical
membranŭla, ae f	—	film (ophthalmic)
Methylēnum, i n	—	methylene
narcōsis, is f	—	narcosis
orōtas, ātis m	—	orotate
parenterālis, e	—	parenteral
pectorālis, e	—	pectoral
Phenoxymethylpenicillīnum, i n	—	phenoxymethylpenicillin
Phenylum, i n	—	phenyl
polyvitaminōsus, a, um	—	polyvitaminous
Pyridoxīnum, i n	—	pyridoxine
rectificātus, a, um	—	rectified (about liquid substances)
rentgēnum, i n	—	roentgenoscopy
salicŷlas, ātis m	—	salicylate
seu	—	or
spirituōsus, a, um	—	spirituous
spirītus, us m	—	spirit
sulfas, ātis m	—	sulphate
suspensio, ōnis f	—	suspension
stabilisātus, a, um	—	stabilized
Theobromīnum-natrium, i n	—	theobromine sodium
usus, us m	—	use
vitamīnum, i n	—	vitamin

II. English–Latin vocabulary

acid	—	acīdum, i n
Adonis (= pheasant's eye)	—	Adōnis, ĩdis m, f
amidopyrin	—	Amidopyrīnum, i n
apomorphine	—	Apomorphīnum, i n
basic acetate	—	subacētas, ātis m

basic nitrate	— subnītras, ātis m
belladonna	— Belladonna, ae f
benzoate	— benzoas, ātis m
bismuth	— Bismūthum, i n
bromide	— bromīdum, i n
broncholytin	— Broncholytīnum, i n
calcium	— Calcium, i n
carbonate	— carbōnas, ātis m
chloride	— chlorīdum, i n
citrate	— citras, ātis m
codeine	— Codeīnum, i n
copper	— Cuprum, i n
diluted	— dilūtus, a, um
dimedrol	— Dimedrōlum, i n
distilled	— destillatus, a, um
drop	— gutta, ae f
ephedrine	— Ephedrīnum, i n
ethylmorphin	— Aethylmorphīnum, i n
fibrinolysin	— Fibrinolysīnum, i n
film (ophthalmic)	— lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f
glycerin	— Glycerīnum, i n
hydrocarbonate	— hydrocarbōnas, ātis m
hydrochloric	— hydrochlorīcus, a, um
hydrochloride	— hydrochlorīdum, i n
hydrotartrate	— hydrotartras, ātis m
hypertonic	— hypertonīcus, a, um
inhalation	— inhalatio, ōnis f
in sufficient amount	— quantum satis
intramuscular	— intramusculāris, e
intravenous	— intravenōsus, a, um
isotonic	— isotonīcus, a, um
lead	— Plumbum, i n
magnesium	— Magnesium, i n
menthol	— Menthōlum, i n
methyluracil	— Methyluracīlum, i n
mint	— Mentha, ae f
morphine	— Morphīnum, i n
morpholong	— Morpholongum, i n
neomycin	— Neomycīnum, i n
number	— numērus, i m
oleandomycin	— Oleandomycīnum, i n
papaverine	— Papaverīnum, i n
paste	— pasta, ae f
peach	— Persīcum, i n
peach oil	— Oleum Persicōrum

phenobarbital	— Phenobarbitālum, i n
phenyl	— Phenylium, i n
phosphate	— phosphas, ātis m
phthivazid	— Phthivazīdum, i n
platyphylline	— Platyphyllīnum, i n
polyethylenoxide	— Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n
potassium	— Kalium, i n
precipitated	— praecipitātus, a, um
rectified	— rectificātus, a, um (about liquid substances)
salicylate	— salicȳlas, ātis m
sarcolysin	— Sarcolysīnum, i n
simple	— simplex, ĩcis
sodium	— Natrium, i n
spirit	— spirītus, us m
spring	— vernālis, e
sugar	— Sacchārum, i n
sulphate	— sulfas, ātis m
syrup	— sirūpus, i m
terrilytin	— Terrilytīnum, i n
use	— usus, us m
vaseline	— Vaselīnum, i n
water	— aqua, ae f

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate the terms into Latin:

1) basic bismuth nitrate 2) peach oil 3) rectified ethylic spirit 4) ether for narcosis 5) ascorbic acide in tablets 6) liquid extract of hawthorn

2. Write down the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in medical prescription and translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

Take: Ethylmorphine hydrochloride 0,1
Vaseline 10,0
Mix to make an ointment
Give. Write on the label:

Take: Oily solution of nitroglycerin
1 % — 0,0005
Let such doses be given in the
amount 20 in capsules
Let it be labeled:

Take: Soluble streptocide 5,0
Solution of glucose 10 % — 100 ml
Mix. Let it be sterilized!
Give. Write on the label:

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

acetylsalicylicus, a, um acetylsalicylic
acidum, i n acid
ad (Acc.) 1) for 2) up to (in prescriptions)
adultus, a, um adult
Aethacridinum, i n ethacridine
Aethazolium-natrium, i n ethazol sodium
aether, ěris m ether
aethylicus, a, um ethylic
Aloë, ěs f aloe
Althaea, ae f althea
amount numĕrus, i m
ampulla, ae f ampoule
Anaesthesolum, i n anaesthesol
anhydrĭcus, a, um anhydrous
Apomorphinum, i n apomorphin
arsenicōsus, a, um arsenous
ascorbinĭcus, a, um ascorbic
Aspirinum, i n aspirin
Atropinum, i n atropin

B

Barium, i n barium
benzoas, ātis m benzoate
Benzylum, i n benzyl

C

Calcium, i n calcium
capsula, ae f capsule
Cerebrolysinum, i n cerebrolysin
coeruleus, a, um blue
Corglyconum, i n corglycon
crystallisātus, a, um crystal
cum (Abl.) with
Cyanocobalaminum, i n cyanocobalamin

D

depurātus, a, um purified
Dibiomycinum, i n dibiomycine
Dicainum, i n dicain
dosis, is f dose
dragée (plur. dragées) dragee (plur. dragees)

E

emplastrum, i n plaster
emulsum, i n emulsion
enterosolubĭlis, e enteric soluble
Erycyclinum, i n erycyclin
Erythrophosphatidum, i n erythrophosphatide
et and
Eucalyptus, i f eucalyptus
Euphyllinum, i n euphyllin
ex (Abl.) from, of
extractum, i n extract

F

Ferrum, i n iron
flaco, ōnis m phial
fluĭdus, a, um liquid
folĭcus, a, um folic
folium, i n leaf
fructus, us m fruit

G

Glucosum, i n glucose
Glycyramum, i n glycyram
granulum, i n granule

H

haemostaticus, a, um haemostatic
Helianthus, i m sunflower
hydrochloridum, i n hydrochloride
Hydrocortisonum, i n hydrocortisone

I

in (Abl.) in
infans, ntis m, f child
infantes, ium m, f children
infusio, ōnis f infusion
injectio, ōnis f injection
intravenosus, a, um intravenous

L

lactas, ātis m lactate
lamella, ae f film (ophthalmic)
Leonurus, i m motherwort
linimentum, i n liniment

M

Magnesium, i n magnesium
medicinālis, e medical
membranūla, ae f film (ophthalmic)
Methylēnum, i n methylene

N

Naphthalānum, i n naphthalan
narcōsis, is f narcosis
Natrium, i n sodium
Norsulfazolum, i n norsulfazol

O

obductus, a, um coated
Oestradiolum, i n oestradiol
of each ana
oleum, i n oil
ophthalmicus, a, um ophthalmic
orōtas, ātis m orotate
oxydum, i n oxide

P

parenterālis, e parenteral
pectorālis, e pectoral
Phenoxymethylpenicillinum, i n phenoxymethylpenicillin
Phenylum, i n phenyl
Phthalazolum, i n phthalazol
Phytinum, i n phytin
Phytomenadiōnum, i n phytomenadion
Plumbum, i n lead
polyvitaminōsus, a, um polyvitaminous
pro (Abl.) for
pulvis, ěris m powder
Pyridoxinum, i n pyridoxine
Pyromecainum, i n pyromecain

Q

quantum satis in sufficient amount
Quercus, us f oak

R

radix, ěcis f root
rectificātus, a, um rectified (about liquid substances)
rentgenum, i n roentgenoscopy
rhizōma, ātis n rhizome

Riboflavinum, i n riboflavin
Ricinus, i m castor oil plant
Rifathyroinum, i n rifathyroin
Rosa, ae f dog-rose, wild rose

S

salicylas, ātis m salicylate
seu or
simplex, ěcis simple
sirūpus, i m syrup
solubilis, e soluble
solutio, ōnis f solution
species, ěrum f species
spirituōsus, a, um spirituous
spirītus, us m spirit
spongia, ae f sponge
stabilisātus, a, um stabilized
Streptocidum, i n streptocide
Sulfacylum, i n sulfacyl
sulfas, ātis m sulphate
Sulfur, ūris n sulphur
suppositorium, i n suppository
suspensio, ōnis f suspension
Synthomycinum, i n synthomycin

T

tabuleta, ae f tablet
Testosteronum, i n testosterone
Theobrominum-natrium, i n theobromine sodium
Theophedrīnum, i n theophedrin
Theophyllinum, i n theophyllin
Thymalinum, i n thymalin
Thyreoidinum, i n thyreoidin
tinctūra, ae f tincture

U

unguentum, i n ointment
usus, us m use

V

vaginālis, e vaginal
Valeriāna, ae f valerian
vitamīnum, i n vitamin
vitreus, a, um vitreous
vitrum, i n glass

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

acetic acetīcus, a um
acid acīdum, i n
adonis (= pheasant's eye) Adōnis, īdis f
adult adultus, a, um; adultus, i, m
aerosol aērosōlum, i n
ethylmorphine Aethylmorphīnum, i n
alcohol «Allochōlum» (Allochōlum, i n)
althea Althaea, ae f
aluminium Aluminium, i n
amidopyrin Amidopyrīnum, i n
amount numērus, i m
ampoule ampulla, ae f
anaesthesin Anaesthesīnum, i n
antiasthmatic antiasthmaticus, a, um
antipyrin Antipyrīnum, i n
apomorphine Apomorphīnum, i n
ascorbic ascorbinīcus, a, um

B

bark cortex, ĩcis m
basic acetate subacētas, ātis m
basic nitrate subnītras, ātis m
belladonna Belladonna, ae f
benzoate benzoas, ātis m
bismuth Bismūthum, i n
boric borīcus, a, um
bromide bromīdum, i n
broncholytin Broncholytīnum, i n

C

calcium Calcium, i n
camphomen «Camphomēnum» (Camphomēnum, i n)
camphoric camphorātus, a, um
capsule capsūla, ae f
carbonate carbōnas, ātis m
castor oil Oleum Ricīni
castor oil plant Ricīnus, i m
children infantes, ium m, f
chloride chlorīdum, i n
chloroform Chloroformium, i n
citrate citras, ātis m
clear purus, a, um
coated obductus, a, um

cocoa Cacāo (without a dictionary form)
codeine Codeīnum, i n
collagenic collagenīcus, a, um
collodium Collodium, i n
compound composītus, a, um
copper Cuprum, i n
cortex cortex, ĩcis m

D

decoction decoctum, i n
diluted dilūtus, a, um
dimedrol Dimedrōlum, i n
distilled destillātus, a, um
dose dosis, is f
dragee (plur. dragees) dragée (plur. dragées)
drop gutta, ae f
dry siccus, a, um

E

emulsion emulsum, i n
ephatin «Ephatīnum» (Ephatīnum, i n)
ephedrine Ephedrīnum, i n
eryhaem Eryhaemum, i n
erynit Erynītum, i n
erythromycin Erythromycīnum, i n
ether aether, ěris m
ethylic aethylīcus, a, um
ethylmorphin Aethylmorphīnum, i n
eucalyptus Eucalyptus, i f
extract extractum, i n

F

feracryl «Feracrȳlum» (Feracrȳlum, i n)
fibrinolysin Fibrinolysīnum, i n
film lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f
finest subtilissīmus, a, um
flax Linum, i n
flower flos, floris m
for pro (Abl.)
foxglove Digitālis, is f
furazolidon Furazolidōnum, i n

G

glass vitrum, i n
glucose Glucōsum, i n
glutaminic glutaminīcus, a, um

glyceric glycerinōsus, a, um
glycerin Glycerīnum, i n
glycin Glycīnum, i n
granule granūlum, i n

H

haemophobin Haemophobīnum, i n
haemostatic haemostatīcus, a, um
hawthorn Crataegus, i f
herb herba, ae f
hydrocarbonate hydrocarbōnas, ātis m
hydrochloric hydrochlorīcus, a, um
hydrochloride hydrochlorīdum, i n
hydrogen Hydrogenium, i n
hydrotartrate hydrotartras, ātis m
hydroxide hydroxĭdum, i n
hypertonic hypertonīcus, a, um

I

ichthyol Ichthyōlum, i n
icy glaciālis, e
in in (Abl.)
in sufficient amount quantum satis
inhalation inhalatio, ōnis f
injection injectio, ōnis f
internal internus, a, um
intramuscular intramusculāris, e
intranasal intranasālis, e
intratracheal intratracheālis, e
intravenous intravenōsus, a, um
introduction introductio, ōnis f
iodine Iōdum, i n
isotonic isotonīcus, a, um

L

lactic lactīcus, a, um
lead Plumbum, i n
leaf folium, i n
licorice Glycyrrhīza, ae f
lily of the valley Convallaria, ae f
liniment linimentum, i n
lipoic lipoīcus, a, um
liquid fluīdus, a, um

M

magnesium Magnesium, i n
matricary Chamomilla, ae f
medicinal medicinālis, e
menthol Menthōlum, i n

mercury Hydrargĭrum, i n
methyluracil Methyluracīlum, i n
mint Mentha, ae f
morphine Morphīnum, i n
morpholong Morpholongum, i n
mycoseptin Mycoseptīnum, i n

N

naphthalan Naphthalānum, i n
narcosis narcōsis, is f
neomycin Neomycīnum, i n
nicotinic nicotinīcus, a, um
nitroglycerin Nitroglycerīnum, i n
norsulfazol Norsulfazōlum, i n
number numĕrus, i m

O

oak Quercus, us f
oestradiol Oestradiōlum, i n
of each ana
oil oleum, i n
oily oleōsus, a, um
ointment unguentum, i n
oleandomycin Oleandomycīnum, i n
ophthalmic ophthalmīcus, a, um
oxide oxĭdum, i n

P

packet fascicūlus, i m
papaverine Papaverīnum, i n
paste pasta, ae f
peach Persīcum, i n
peach oil Oleum Persicōrum
pectoral pectorālis, e
pepper piperītus, a, um
peroxide peroxĭdum, i n
phenobarbital Phenobarbitālum, i n
phenyl Phenylium, i n
phial flaco, ōnis m
phosphate phosphas, ātis m
phthalazol Phthalazōlum, i n
phthivazid Phthivazīdum, i n
phytomenadion Phytomenadiōnum, i n
plaster emplasrum, i n
plastic polyaethylenīcus, a, um
platyphyllin Platyphyllinīnum, i n
polyethylenoxid Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n
potassium Kalium, i n

powder pulvis, ěris m
precipitated praecipitātus, a, um
pregoestrol Praegoestrōlum, i n
purified depurātus, a, um

R

rectified rectificātus, a, um (about liquid substances)

rectal rectālis, e

rhizome rhizōma, ātis n

rhubarb Rheum, i n

riboflavin Riboflavīnum, i n

root radix, ĩcis f

S

salicylate salicylas, ātis m

salicylic salicylicus, a, um

sarcolysin Sarcolysinum, i n

seed semen, ĩnis n

simple simplex, ĩcis

sodium Natrium, i n

soluble solubĭlis, e

soluthizon Soluthizōnum, i n

solution solutio, ōnis f

species species, ěrum f (only plur.)

spirit (alcohol) spirĭtus, us m

spirituous spirituōsus, a, um

sponge spongia, ae f

spring vernālis, e

starch Amylum, i n

streptocide Streptocĭdum, i n

strophanthin Strophanthĭnum, i n

strophanthus Strophanthus, i m

sublingual sublinguālis, e

such talis, e

sugar Sacchārum, i n

sulfadimezine Sulfadimezĭnum, i n

sulphadimidine Sulfadimidĭnum, i n

sulphate sulfas, ātis m

sulphur Sulfur, ūris n

sunflower Helianthus, i m

suppository suppositorium, i n **suspension** suspensio, ōnis f

synoestrol Synoestrōlum, i n

synthomycin Synthomycĭnum, i n

syrup sirūpus, i m

T

tablet tabuletta, ae f

tea thea, ae f

terrilytin Terrilytĭnum, i n

tertracyclin Tetracyclĭnum, i n

testoenat Testoenātum, i n

theophyllin Theophyllĭnum, i n

thioacetazone Thioacetazōnum, i n

thymogen Thymogĕnum, i n

tincture tinctūra, ae f

trituration trituration, ōnis f

U

up to ad (Acc.)

use usus, us m

V

vaginal vaginālis, e

valerian Valeriāna, ae f

vaseline Vaselĭnum, i n

vitreous vitreus, a, um

W

water aqua, ae f

wheat Tritĭcum, i n

white albus, a, um

with cum (Abl.)

Y

yellow flavus, a, um

Z

zinc Zincum, i n

Part IV. CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

LESSON 13

INTRODUCTION TO THE LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY.

ONE-WORD TERMS AND THEIR MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE. INITIAL AND FINAL MORPHOLOGICAL ELEMENTS USED FOR WORD BUILDING.

MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. NAMES OF BRANCHES OF MEDICINE AND MEDICAL SPECIALISTS. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS

Clinical names are the most numerous among all medical terms, as these names signify the huge amount of different diseases, pathological conditions and abnormalities, medical examinations and operations. This terminology also includes a great amount of paramedical vocabulary. It is estimated that about 50% English medical terms is of Greek origin, but this relation is particularly marked in clinical terms.

The word **clinical** itself is of Greek origin (*klinike* means *bed*) and it is the acknowledgement of the outstanding role of Greek physicians in both theoretical and practical medicine. Thanks to Greek physicians many diseases got their names and via Latin became part of European medical languages. New clinical names coming into use were built, as a rule, on the base of Greek vocabulary and Greek morphological elements. The grammar form of new clinical terms corresponds to the norms of Latin or other European languages. This historical tradition, in particular, is strictly followed in English. For example:

Latin	English	Meaning
adenītis	adenitis	inflammation of a gland
cardiopathia	cardiopathy	disease of the heart
osteōma	osteoma	tumour made up of bone tissue

It is indisputable, that clinical terms composed on the base of Greek morphological elements have a very important advantage: they are short, but may stand in for a large clinical definition. That's why they are the priority choice of the physicians all over the world, and every one who has a M. D. must know the rules of word building of medical terms and to learn lexical and morphological word building elements.

From the point of view of their morphological structure, one-word clinical terms can be 1) simple, containing only one stem and 2) compound, consisting of two or more morphological elements.

About 15 % clinical names belong to the first group, e. g. *asthma*, *ātis* n — *asthma*; *cancer*, *cri* m — *cancer*; *herpes*, *ētis* m — *herpes*; *ulcus*, *ēris* n — *ulcer*. These noun-terms are mostly used in combination with adjectives or nouns: *asthma bronchiāle* — bronchial asthma; *ulcus gastris* — ulcer of the stomach.

The majority of one-word clinical terms consist of two or more morphological elements. These elements can be expressed by:

1. Greek affixes (prefixes, suffixes) and roots of nouns or adjectives. In this case, the name can contain:

1.1. A prefix, a root, a suffix and an ending (mostly **-ia**, **-ēma**, **-ismus**, **-ītis**, **-ōma**, **-ōsis**):

parametrītis, īdis f — parametritis (tissue inflammation near uterus). The name includes: a) the prefix **para-** (near) b) the root **metr-** (uterus) c) the suffix **-ītis** (strictly speaking — combination of suffix **-it-** and ending **-is**) with the constant meaning of «inflammation»;

1.2. A prefix, one or more roots and an ending:

atrichia, ae f — atrichia (lack of hair). The name includes: a) the prefix **a-** (absence, lack, cessation of a function) b) the root **trich-** (hair) c) the ending **-ia**;

hypermetropia, ae f — hypermetropia (long-sightedness). The name includes: a) the prefix **hyper-** (excess function) b) the root **metr-** (dimension) c) the final root **-opia** (sight);

1.3. A root and a suffix (suffixed ending):

chondrōma, ātis n — chondroma (tumour of cartilaginous tissue). The name includes: a) the root **chondr-** (cartilage) b) the suffix **-ōma** with the meaning «tumour» (= tumor).

2. The initial and final word building roots in combination with the term endings **-ia**, **-ēma**, **-ismus**, **-ītis**, **-ōma**, **-ōsis**, **-us**. If the initial word building root hereby ends up with a consonant and the final one begins with a consonant too, these roots are joined via a connecting vowel **-o-**:

rhinopathia, ae f — rhinopathy (disease of the nose). The name includes: 1) the root **rhin-** (nose) 2) the connecting vowel **-o-** 3) the root **path-** (disease);

otorhinolaryngolōgus, i m — otorhinolaryngologist (the doctor for treating ear, nose and larynx diseases). The name includes: a) the root **ot-** (ear) b) the root **rhin-** (nose) c) the root **laryng-** (larynx) d) the final root **-logus** (specialist in a medical region).

If the first root ends with a vowel, the connecting **-o-** is usually omitted:

pelvimetria, ae f — pelvimetry (measuring of pelvis dimension in women);

tachycardia, ae f — tachycardia (abnormally fast heart rate).

If the second root begins with a vowel, the connecting **-o-** as a rule is omitted too:

haemat + uria → **haematuria, ae f** — haematuria (blood in the urine);

odont + algia → **odontalgia, ae f** — odontalgia (toothache, feeling of pain in the tooth).

Some exceptions to this rule are nevertheless found: e. g. the roots **broncho-** and **bronchi-** never lose their final vowels: **bronchiectasia, ae f** (= bronchoectasia) — bronchiectasis (expansion of the bronchi); **bronchoadenītis, itīdis f** — bronchoadenitis (inflammation of bronchial lymphatic glands). The root **bi-** is always used with the connecting **-o-**: biocycle, biology, microbiology, biopharmaceutics.

In the compound nouns with the ending **-ia** the last but one vowel «i» is, as a rule, stressed contrary to the rule «vowel before vowel is short»: atrichía, bronchiectasía, haematuría, hypermetropía, odontalgía, rhinopathía. The nouns **anatómia** (anatomy), hemicránia (hemicrania) and nouns with the final element **-logia** keep the third syllable from the end stressed: cardiología (cardiology), stomatología (stomatology).

Initial root elements are combined in a one-word term, as you could see above, with the final roots via the connecting vowel **-o-** or with the final suffixes. These roots are presented in the table of each lesson in the following consequence: 1) the Greek root 2) its Latin equivalent in the dictionary form 3) English meaning 4) English clinical word element:

haem-, haemat-	sanguis, ĩnis m	blood	haem-, haemat-
-----------------------	------------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Initial roots can have two or more variants: ger-, geront- (old men or old age); haem-, haemat- (blood). All these variants are to be learnt by heart.

Final root elements are not as numerous as initial ones, but their word building capacity is very high. One should also remember that the final root or suffixed word building element is the first in the making up the literal translation of the term, for example:

The term **nephrographia, ae f** consists of the initial root **nephr-** (kidney) and the final root **-graphia** (X-ray examination), so the literal translation is «X-ray examination of the kidneys», nephrography.

The term **myōma, ātis n** consists of the initial root **my-** (muscle) and the final root **-oma** (tumour), so the literal translation is «tumour of muscular tissue», myoma.

Final root elements can be part of an adjective too, e. g.: **-gēnus, a, um** in the term **biogēnus, a, um** — biogenic (caused by a vital organism).

The final roots are presented at each lesson in the table like that:

-logus — a specialist in a branch of science or medicine

-iāter — a doctor, specialist in a branch of clinical medicine

Some roots may be both initial and final. As final roots they have common endings, mostly the ending **-ia**. For example: **odont-** as the initial root and **-odontia** as the final one: **odontolīthus, i m** — odontolith, calculus on the teeth and **orthodontia, ae f** — orthodontics, the part of dental surgery which is concerned with the prevention and correction of the malocclusion of teeth.

Any multiword term consists, as a rule, of two or three words. The noun containing the cardinal information of the term is placed first, and then one or two nouns or one or two adjectives follow. The second and third nouns indicate the

localization of the diseased organ or tissue; adjectives give qualitative and quantitative characteristics of the morbid condition:

infarctus cerēbri — cerebral infarct, an infarct of cerebral tissue due to failure of blood supply resulting from vascular thrombosis, embolism or spasm

neuralgia nervi trigemīni — trigeminal neuralgia, neuralgic pain located in various portions of the head — in the distributions of one or more of the sensory divisions of the 5-th cranial nerve

anaemia haemorrhagīca — haemorrhagic an(a)emia, an(a)emia caused by acute or chronic loss of blood because of whatever cause

stomatītis apthōsa chronīca — chronic apthous stomatitis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the mouth, accompanied by small vesicles occurring on the mucous membrane of the cheeks and lips and rupturing to painful ulcers.

The combination of a noun and an adjective after the first noun of the term can be present too:

Atrophia faciēi progrediens — progressive facial atrophy, a condition in which there is a progressive wasting of the skin of the face

Status praecancerōsus cutis faciēi — precancerous state of the face skin

To sum up, we can say that multiword clinical terms are built similar to anatomical ones. First of all, the dictionary form of every word should be given. After that, the term is built according to the already known rules.

The names of common branches of clinical medicine are usually formed by means of the final root element **-logia** and the appropriate initial one, which determines the cardinal sense of the term. It should be mentioned that the most numerous names of medico-biological sciences are built according to this rule:

ophthalm- (eye) + -logia → **ophthalmologia, ae f** — ophthalmology, branch of clinical medicine treating eye diseases;

proct- (rectum) + -logia → **proctologia, ae f** — proctology, branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases. Compare also:

immunologia, ae f — immunology, science about immunity;

pharmacologia, ae f — pharmacology, science about drugs and their usage;

physiologia, ae f — physiology, science about normal vital processes in human organism.

Names of some branches of clinical medicine are built by adding the root **-patho-** (disease) and the final root **-logia** to the initial root:

neur- (nerve) + -patho- + -logia → **neuropathologia, ae f** — neuropathology, clinical neurology, branch of clinical medicine meant for treating nerve diseases;

sex- (sex) + -patho- + -logia → **sexopathologia, ae f** — sexopathology, branch of medicine meant to heal sexual disorders.

Some names of medical branches are formed by means of the final root element **-iatria**, which means some definite branches of clinical medicine:

geriatria, ae f — geriatrics, particular branch of medicine treating diseases of old age;

paediatria, ae f — paediatrics, branch of medicine treating children's diseases;

phoniatria, ae f — phoniatics, branch of medicine treating disorders of voice formation;

phthisiatria, ae f — phthisiology, branch of medicine treating tuberculosis;

psychiatria, ae f — psychiatrics (psychiatry), branch of medicine treating mental diseases.

Most medical specialist's names are composed of the final root element **-logus** and the appropriate initial root element which determines the cardinal sense of the term. In this way names of most biological and medical specialist are formed:

anthropolōgus, i m — anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution;

stomatolōgus, i m — stomatologist, a doctor-specialist treating diseases of the oral cavity;

diaetolōgus, i m — dietitian, a doctor-specialist in the dietary nutrition;

haematolōgus, i m — haematologist, a doctor-specialist in blood diseases.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending **-pathologia**, then the name of specialist has the ending **-patholōgus**:

neuropathologia → **neuropatholōgus, i m** — neuropathologist, a doctor-specialist in nerve diseases;

sexopathologia → **sexopatholōgus, i m** — sexopathologist, a doctor-specialist treating sexual disorders.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending **-iatria**, then the name of specialist has the ending **-iāter**:

paediatria → **paediāter, tri m** — paediatrician (=paediatrist), a doctor-specialist in children's diseases.

Finally, many Latin names of medical specialists are built by means of the suffix **-ista** and the initial root element:

oculista, ae m — oculist, a doctor-specialist treating eye diseases;

therapeutista, ae m — physician, therapist (therapist), a doctor-specialist treating inner organs.

Names of medical specialists in Latin don't fully coincide with the English equivalents, as seen above. The difference lies not only on the morphological level (pthisiāter, tri m — pthisiologist), — sometimes, the lexical units don't correspond each other. For example, the name **otorhinolaryngologist** is not quite

common for English or American medical use; — instead three separate terms are used: otologist, rhinologist and laryngologist. But, the term **otolaryngologist** exists too. That's why it's more convenient to use this slightly artificial, but formally correct term **otorhinolaryngologist**, than to bring three English terms as equivalents. And otherwise, we tend to keep the terms presented both in modern English and Latin medical dictionaries.

The names of medical examinations are usually formed by means of the final root elements **-graphia, -metria, -scopia, -diagnostica**:

cystographia, ae f — cystography, X-ray examination of the urinary bladder;

craniometria, ae f — craniometry, measuring of skull;

proctoscopia, ae f — proctoscopy, internal examination of the rectum;

thermodiagnostica, ae f — thermodiagnosics, a diagnosis via registration of infrared radiation.

Names which signify methods of medical treatment usually contain the final root element **-therapia** and the initial root element pointing at the method of the treatment:

phytotherapia, ae f — phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal plants.

Results of X-ray, electric or other methods of medical examination are expressed by the final root **-gramma**:

haemogramma, ātis n — haemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood;

rhinogramma, ātis n — rhinogram, X-ray photograph of nose.

Greek initial roots and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
anthrop-	homo, ĩnis m	man, human	anthrop-
bi-	vita, ae f	life	bi-
cardi-, -cardia	cor, cordis n	heart	cardi-, -cardia
gloss-, -glossia	lingua, ae f	tongue	gloss-, -glossia
gynaec-	femĭna, ae f	wife	gynaec-
haem-, haemat-	sanguis, ĩnis m	blood	haem-, haemat-
neur-	nervus, i m	nerve	neur-
odont-, -odontia	dens, dentis m	tooth	odont-, -odontia
ophthalm-, -ophthalmia	ocŭlus, i m	eye	ophthalm-, -ophthalmia
ot-	auris, is f	ear	ot-
paed-	infans, ntis m, f	child	paed-
path-, -pathia	morbus, i m	disease	path-, -pathia
pharmac-	medicamentum, i n	drug	pharmac-
Greek initial roots and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
phthisi-	tuberculōsis, is f	tuberculosis	phthisi-

physi-	natūra, ae f	nature	physi-
phyt-	planta, ae f	plant	phyt-
proct-	rectum, i n	rectum	proct-
psych-	anīmus, i m	psyche	psych-
rhin-	nasus, i m	nose	rhin-
stom-, stomat-, -stomia	os, oris n	mouth	stom-, stomat-, -stomia

Final root elements	English meaning
-diagnostīca	examination of functional state of organs in order to reveal some disorders
-gēnus, a, um	1) caused by any factor 2) forming or producing any factor
-graphia	1) X-ray examination 2) examination by means of electricity 3) recording of the result of some examination
-gramma	result of some medical examination seen on a film or presented graphically
-iāter	medical specialist treating certain inner diseases
-iatria	any definite branch of clinical medicine
-logia	name of some science or branch of clinical medicine
-lōgus	name of medical or biological specialists
-metria	measurement of physical characteristics of human body
-scopia	visual or instrumental visual examination
-therapia	method of treatment

So, your task is to memorize the word building elements of this and the following lessons and combine these elements in terms. If you are not quite sure of your version of translation, consult the dictionary.

1. Determine (orally) the full dictionary form of each term and the meaning of the initial and final roots and write down the full definition of each term:

anthropologia; anthropogēnus; biologia; cardiolōgus; cardiogēnus; gynae-colōgus; haematologia; iatrogēnus; neuropatholōgus; ophthalmoscopia; odontogēnus; otorhinolaryngologia; physiologia; phthisiāter; phytotherapia; proctolōgus; psychiatria; rhinogramma; stomatoscopia.

2. Make up in the Latin dictionary form the one-word terms with the following meaning:

branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases; branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of children; medical specialist treating blood diseases; medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs; results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood; science studying drugs and their usage; treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors; specialist studying forms of life and vital organisms; specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution; method of treatment by means of medicinal plants; the X-ray examination of tooth.

3. Give the full definition in English and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

anthropologist; biopharmaceutics; cardiogram; cardiography; haematology; haemogram; iatrogenic; odontogram; neurogenic; ophthalmoscopy; otogenic; oto-

rhinolaryngologist; paediatrician (paediatrist); pharmacotherapy; phthisiologist; phytotherapy; proctodiagnostics; proctoscopy; psychiatrist; psychogenic; psychologist; rhinoscopy; stomatology; stomatologist; therapist (therapist); thoracometry.

4. Give the Latin dictionary form and translate into English (A) and into Latin (B):

A. Caries dentium incisivōrum; curatio cariēi profundae; extractio dentis; foetor ex ore; fractūra mandibūlae; mobilitas dentium premolarium; herpes simplex (zoster); morbi allergīci; tuberculōsis laryngis.

B. Comatose state; denudation of the tooth cervix; devitalized teeth; diseases of the pulp; plicated tongue; rupture of nasal septum; short frenulum of upper lip; trauma of masticatory muscles; viral and bacterial infections.

I. Latin-English vocabulary

allergīcus, a, um	allergic
anthropologia, ae f	anthropology, science studying the man in the process of his evolution
anthropolōgus, i m	anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution
biologia, ae f	biology, science studying forms of life and vital organisms
cancer, cri m	cancer
cardiogēnus, a, um	cardiogenic, happening because of the heart
cardiolōgus, i m	cardiologist, medical specialist treating heart diseases
caries, ēi f	caries, a gradual decay or death of bone as a result of chronic infection
curatio, ōnis f	medical treatment
dentinogenēsis, is f	dentinogenesis, the formation and development of the dentine by the odontoblasts
extractio, ōnis f	extraction
foetor, ōris m	a foul odor or stench, fetor
fractūra, ae f	fracture
gynaecolōgus, i m	gynecologist, medical specialist treating genital diseases in women
haematologia, ae f	haematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases
herpes, ētis m	inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles, herpes
iatrogēnus, a, um	iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks
imperfectus, a, um	incomplete
incisīvus, a, um (dens)	incisor (tooth)
larynx, yngis m	larynx

lingua, ae f	tongue
luxatio, ōnis f	luxation, dislocation
mandibŭla, ae f	mandible
mobilitas, ātis f	mobility
morbus, i m	disease
mucōsus, a, um	mucous
neuropatholōgus, i m	neuropathologist, medical specialist treating diseases of the nervous system
odontogēnus, a, um	odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth
odontogramma, ātis n	odontogram, X-ray film of the tooth
odontoscopia, ae f	odontoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the tooth
ophthalmoscopia, ae f	ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye
os, oris n	mouth
otorhinolaryngologia, ae f	otorhinolaryngology, branch of medicine treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx
physiologia, ae f	physiology, science studying normal vital processes in human body
phthisiāter, tri m	phthisiologist, medical specialist treating tuberculosis
phytotherapia, ae f	phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal plants
plicātus, a, um	plicate, folded
premolāris, e	premolar
proctolōgus, i m	proctologist, medical specialist treating diseases of rectum
profundus, a, um	deep
psychiatria, ae f	psychiatry, branch of medicine treating mental diseases
rhinogramma, ātis n	rhinogram, X-ray film of the nose
stomatoscopia, ae f	stomatoscopy, visual examination of the oral cavity
tuberculōsis, is f	tuberculosis
tunīca, ae f	membrane
zoster, ēris m	zoster

II. English-Latin vocabulary

amputation	amputatio, ōnis f
anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution	anthropolōgus, i m
bacterial	bacteriālis, e
biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances	biopharmaceutīca, ae f
branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases, proctology	proctologia, ae f
branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of children,	

paediatrics	paediatrica, ae f
cardiogram 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical picture of heart action	cardiogramma, ātis n
cardiography 1) X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical recording of heart action	cardiographia, ae f
cervix	cervix, īcis f
comatose, affected with coma	comatōsus, a, um
denudation, the state of being deprived of a protecting layer or covering	denudatio, ōnis f
devitalized, deprived of life or vitalizing properties	devitalisātus, a, um
diagnosis via examination of iris, iridodiagnostics	iridodiagnostīca, ae f
fracture	fractūra, ae f
frenulum	frenūlum, i n
glossotomy, dissection of the tongue	glossotomia, ae f
haemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood	haemogramma, ātis n
iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks	iatrogēnus, a, um
infection	infectio, ōnis f
iridodiagnostics, diagnosis via examination of iris	iridodiagnostīca, ae f
lip	labium, i n
luxation, dislocation	luxatio, ōnis f
masticatory	masticatorius, a, um
measurement of pelvis in women, pelvimetry	pelvimetria, ae f
medical specialist treating blood diseases, haematologist	haematolōgus, i m
medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs, therapist (therapist)	therapeutista, ae m
method of treatment by means of medicinal plants, phytotherapy	phytotherapia, ae f
nasal	nasālis, e
neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system disorders	neurogēnus, a, um
ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye	ophthalmoscopia, ae f
otogenic, happening because of the ear	otogēnus, a, um
otorhinolaryngologist, medical specialist treating ear, nose and larynx diseases	otothinolaryngolōgus, i m
paediatrician (paediatrist), medical specialist treating children's diseases	paediāter, tri m
pharmacotherapy, the treatment of disease with drugs	pharmacotherapia, ae f
phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal plants	phytotherapia, ae f
plicated	plicātus, a, um
proctodiagnostics, examination of the functional state of the rectum	proctodiagnostīca, ae f

proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum	proctoscopia, ae f
phthisiologist, medical specialist treating tuberculosis	phthisiāter, tri m
psychiatrist, medical specialist treating mental diseases	psychiāter, tri m
psychologist, specialist studying mental activities of a human personality	psycholōgus, i m
pulp	pulpa, ae f
results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, haemogram	haemogramma, ātis n
rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose	rhinoscopia, ae f
rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or an other structure	ruptūra, ae f
science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacology	pharmacologia, ae f
septum	septum, i n
short	brevis, e
somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of human body	somatologia, ae f
specialist studying forms of life and vital organisms, biologist	biolōgus, i m
specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropologist	anthropolōgus, i m
state	status, us m
stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity	stomatologia, ae f
therapeutist (therapist), medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs	therapeutista, ae m
thoracometry, measurement of the size of the thorax	thoracometria, ae f
tongue	lingua, ae f
tonsillectomy, the surgical operation for removal of a tonsill	tonsillectomia, ae f
trauma, injury	trauma, ātis n
treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy	physiotherapia, ae f
tuberculosis, the disease caused by infection with the Mycobacterium tuberculosis	tuberculōsis, is f
viral	virālis, e
the X-ray examination of mamma, mammography	mammographia, ae f
the X-ray examination of tooth, odontography	odontographia, ae f

LESSON 14

ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTION DISORDERS, PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS

Usually, one-word names of functional disorders are composed of Greek prefixes and roots. There are the following prefixes:

1. The prefix **a-** (before a consonant) or **an-** (before a vowel). This prefix signifies cessation or loss of a function as well as lack of property:

adentia, ae f — lack of teeth, adentia;

anuria, ae f — complete cessation of the secretion and excretion of urine, anuria;

aphagia, ae f — a condition in which the ability of swallowing is lacking, aphagia.

In the same way the Latin prefix **in-** (**im-** before consonants **b** or **m**) combined with Latin roots is used both in nouns and adjectives:

incontinentia, ae f — lack of voluntary control over the discharge of faeces or urine, incontinence;

insufficiētia, ae f — state of being inadequate to perform normal functions, insufficiency;

immobilitās, ātis f — lack of mobility, immobility;

insensibilis, e — lack of sensibility or intelligence, insensible.

2. The prefix **dys-** signifies functional disorders:

dysgeusia, ae f — impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia;

dysthyreōsis, is f — imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreōsis;

dysuria, ae f — condition in which the passage of urine is difficult, dysuria.

3. The prefix **en-** (**em-** before consonants **b, m, p**) indicates the inner location of any morbid condition:

empyēma, ātis n — accumulation of pus in a cavity;

enophthalmus, i m — recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit.

As prefixed elements some Greek adjectives, pronouns and numerals are used:

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English translation
auto-	self-, resulting of one's own action	autopepsia, ae f (autolysis, is f)	the process of spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia (autolysis)
mono-	one (part)	monoplegia, ae f	a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is affected, monoplegia
di-	two (parts)	diplegia, ae f	paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia
hemi-	half	hemialgia, ae f	neuralgic pain affecting the right or the left side of the body or the right or the left side of any part of the body, hemialgia

The majority of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions are composed of Greek roots, suffixes and endings which are adapted to Latin grammar system. One group of terms consists of a root, a suffix and an ending. Two suffixes of this group compose a morphological unity with their endings:

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
-ismus (suffix -ism- + -us , ending of the 2nd declension)	abnormality or pathological process, the meaning of which is determined by the root element	botulismus, i m	botulism	a form of food poisoning due to the botulinum toxin
-ōsis (suffix -os- + -is , ending of the 3rd declension)	pathological condition or process	dermatōsis, is f	dermatosis	any skin disease

Attention! The final suffix **-ōsis** may be used as the morphological part of a noun term not denoting a disease:

diagnōsis, is f — diagnosis, the scientific recognition of the disease from which a person suffers;

symbiōsis, is f — symbiosis, the intimate association of two organisms.

The next two suffixes are considered as final suffixed elements of the nouns of the 3-rd declension:

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
-ēma	different pathological conditions	enanthēma, ātis n	enanthema	the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue
-iāsis	different pathological conditions	psoriāsis, is f	psoriasis	a chronic disease of the skin characterized by the appearance of laminated scales

But the majority of terms composed of morphological elements present with initial and final roots. First of all, the root **path-** combined with the ending **-ia** is used:

arthropathia, ae f — any disease affecting a joint, athropathy;

nephropathia, ae f — a disease of the kidney, nephropathy;

rhinopathia, ae f — any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy.

Other roots are also used as final elements which define more precisely the character of pathological condition, e. g.:

angiorrhagia, ae f — a haemorrhage from a vessel, angiorrhagia;

arthralgia, ae f — any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia;

cancerophobia, ae f — unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma, cancerophobia (= carcinomatophobia).

Nevertheless, about 20 % of one-word terms signifying pathological processes and abnormal conditions are nouns comprised of one root:

coma, ātis n — the state of complete loss of consciousness with a disorder of vitally important functions, coma;

infarctus, us m — an area of dead tissue produced by the obstruction of an end artery, infarction;

insultus, us m — cerebral thrombosis, stroke;

sepsis, is f — infection with pyogenic microorganisms, sepsis.

Sometimes, to correct or improve some abnormal condition of the organism, one must use an operative interference. The names of such operative interferences are composed with the help of an initial Greek root signifying the object of this interference and final root elements **-tomia** (operative cutting) or **-ectomia** (amputation or excision of an organ or its part), for example:

osteotomia, ae f — the operation of cutting through a bone, osteotomy;

tonsillectomia, ae f — surgical excision of a tonsil, tonsillectomy.

Surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach etc. is named **resectio, ōnis f** (resection), for example:

Resectio gingivae — gum resection, resection of the gingiva.

The full removal of an organ or an anatomical structure is named **amputatio, ōnis f** (amputation), for example:

amputatio radice dentis — amputation of tooth root

Greek initial roots and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
angi-	vas, vasis n	vessel	angi-
arthr-	articulatio, ōnis f	joint	arthr-
brady-	lentus, a, um	slow	brady-
cephal-, -cephalia	caput, ĩtis n	head	cephal-, -cephaly
chondr-	cartilāgo, ĩnis f	cartilage	chondr-
dactyl-, -dactylia	digĭtus, i m	finger or toe	dactyl-
derm-, dermat-, -dermia, -derma	cutis, is f	skin	derm-, dermat-, -dermia, -derma
encephal-	cerĕbrum, i n	brain	encephal-
my-	muscŭlus, i m	muscle	my-
nephr-	ren, renis m	kidney	nephr-
oste-	os, ossis n	bone	oste-
phon-, -phonia	vox, vocis f	voice	phon-, -phonia
phot-	lux, lucis f	light	phot-
phleb-	vena, ae f	vein	phleb-
pseud-	falsus, a, um	false	pseud-
spasm-, -spasmus	spasmus, i m	spasm	spasm-, -spasm
tox-, toxic-	venĕnum, i n	poison	tox-, toxic-
tachy-	celer, ěris, ěre	fast, quick	tachy-
trich-, -trichia	capillus, i m; pilus, i m	hair	trich-
xer-	siccus, a, um	dry	xer-

Final root elements	English meaning
-algia	pain in any part of the body
-ectomia	amputation or excision of an organ or its part
-geusia	different pathological conditions of taste
-kinesia	different pathological conditions of voluntary motion
-mania	any form of mental disorder accompanied by some degree of excitation
-mycōsis	a morbid condition caused by a pathogenic fungus

Final root elements	English meaning
-opia, -opsia	any condition of vision
-pepsia	any condition of digestion
-phagia	any pathological condition in the act of swallowing
-philia	predisposition to any morbid condition
-phobia	a pathological fear
-plegia	paralysis (palsy) of the muscles of any organ
-pnoë	a pathological condition of breathing
-tomia	operative cutting
-trophia	nutrition

1. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term and its English equivalent:

angiopathia; autohaemotherapy; bradyphagia; bradypnoë; chondropathia; dactylospasmus; dermatōsis; dermatomycōsis; dysgeusia; encephalogramma; gastrospasmus; hemicrania; hemiplegia; monodactylismus; myoplegia; myotomia; osteopathia; phlebocarcinōma; phlebotomia; photophobia; pseudoanodontia; pseudarthrōsis; spasmophilia; stomatomycōsis; tachycardia; toxicomania; xerophthalmia.

2. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal quickness in eating; a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales; a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking; any disease affecting a joint; any disease of the skin; any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair; any morbid condition of the nose; a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is affected; an impairment of the voice; any kind of pain affecting a joint; paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body; the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue; the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart; unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma.

3. Give the full definition in English and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

angiology; apnoea; arthralgia; atrichia; atrophy; bradycardia; cephalalgia; didactylism; dystrophy; glossotomy; hemiatrophy; haemophilia; mastopathy; nephrogenic; nephropathy; ophthalmoplegia; osteochondrosis; osteodystrophy; osteotomy; pharmacophobia; phoniatics; phlebography; phonocardiogram; photophobia; proctospasm; rhinopathy; tachyphagia; tonsillectomy; toxicosis; xerostomia.

4. Give the dictionary form and translate into English (A) and into Latin (B):

A. Atrophia papillārum linguae; cysta dentālis radiculāris; defectus cuneiformis dentium; dysplasia enamēli; exacerbatio parodontōsis chronīcae; fistūla suppuratīva buccae; resectio mandibūlae; ulcus linguae.

B. Actinomycosis of salivary glands; amputation of tooth root; diabetic coma; hyperesthesia of the hard teeth tissues; insufficiency of the cardiac valves; prophylaxis of malignant tumors; protrusive occlusion.

I. Latin–English vocabulary

allergicus, a, um	caused by or affected with allergy, allergic
angiopathia, ae f	any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy
arthromalacia, ae f	softening of joints, arthromalacia
atrophia, ae f	a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause, atrophy
autohaemotherapia, ae f	a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherapy
bradyphagia, ae f	slowing of swallowing, bradyphagia
bradypnoë, ës f	an abnormally slow rare of breathing, bradypnea
bucca, ae f	cheek
cariõsus, a, um	affected with caries, carious
chondropathia, ae f	any disease affecting a cartilage, chondropathy
chronicus, a, um	long continued, chronic
cuneiformis, e	cuneiform
cysta, ae f	a cavity lined by an inflamed or neoplastic tissue, cyst
dactylospasmus, i m	spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe, dactylospasm
defectus, us m	a defect
dentãlis, e	dental
dermatõsis, is f	any disease of the skin, dermatosis
dermatomycõsis, is f	a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi, dermatomycosis
dysgeusia, ae f	impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia
dysplasia, ae f	abnormal development of tissue, dysplasia
enamēlum, i n	enamel
encephalogramma, ätis n	any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain, encephalogram
exacerbatio, õnis f	increase in severity of a disease, exacerbation
fistũla, ae f	an unnatural communication between an organ and the body surface, fistula
gastrospasmus, i m	an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle, gastrospasm
hemicrania, ae f	a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches, hemicrania
hemiplegia, ae f	paralysis of one side of the body, hemiplegia
monodactylismus, i m	a congenital condition in which only one finger or toe is present on the hand or the foot, monodactylism
morbus, i m	disease
myoplegia, ae f	paralysis of muscle or a condition in which muscular force is decreased, myoplegia

myotomia, ae f	the dissection of a muscle or of muscular tissue, myotomy
osteomalacia, ae f	softening of bones, osteomalacia
osteopathia, ae f	disease of bones, osteopathia
papilla, ae f	papilla
parodontōsis, is f (=periodontōsis, is f)	any degenerative change occurring in alveolar periosteum
phlebocarcinōma, ātis n	a malignant epithelial tumour affecting a vein, phlebocarcinoma
photophobia, ae f	abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia
pseudarthrōsis, is f	a false joint formed between the fragments of a fractured bone which have failed to unite, pseudarthrosis
radiculāris, e	radicular
resectio, ōnis f	resection, surgical removal of a part of an anatomical structure
spasmophilia, ae f	a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and a spasm, spasmophilia
stomatomycōsis, is f	any morbid condition of the oral cavity caused by a microscopical fungus, stomatomycosis
suppuratīvus, a, um	pus-forming, having a tendency toward suppuration, suppurative
tachycardia, ae f	a rapid action of the heart, tachycardia
toxicomania, ae f	an insane desire for poison, toxicomania
ulcus, ěris n	a localized necrotic lesion of the skin or a mucous surface, an ulcer

II. English — Latin vocabulary

abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia	tachyphagia, ae f
actinomycosis, an infective disease, caused by Actinomyces israeli	actinomycōsis, is f
acute	acūtus, a, um
amputation, the removal of a limb or portion of a limb, or of any other appendage	amputatio, ōnis f
angiology, the science of blood vessels	angiologia, ae f
any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy	arthropathia, ae f
any disease of the skin, dermatosis	dermatōsis, is f
any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia	arthralgia, ae f
any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy	rhinopathia, ae f
any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy	trichopathia, ae f
apnoea, the cessation of breathing	apnoë, ěs f
arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint	arthralgia, ae f
atrachia, not having hair	atrachia, ae f
atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause	atrophia, ae f
biopsy, examination for purposes of diagnosis of tissue cut from the living body	biopsia, ae f
bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate	bradycardia, ae f
cardiac	cardiācus, a, um

cephalalgia, pain in the head	cephalalgia,ae f
a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis	psoriāsis, is f
coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient can not be roused by any ordinary external stimulus	coma, ātis n
a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia	aphagia, ae f
diabetic, relating to diabetes	diabetīcus, a , um
didactylism, the congenital condition of having only two fingers on a hand or two toes on a foot	didactylismus, i m
dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue	dysplasia, ae f
dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue due to perverted nutrition	dystrophia, ae f
encephalomalacia, softening of the brain	encephalomalacia, ae f
fibrous	fibrōsus, a, um
gland	glandŭla, ae f
hard	durus, a, um
hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or one half of an organ	hemiatrophia, ae f
haemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males and transmitted by females	haemophilia, ae f
impairment of the voice, dysphonia	dysphonia, ae f
infection	infectio, ōnis f
insufficiency	insufficiētia,ae f
intravenous	intravenōsus, a, um
lingual	linguālis, e
malignant (neoplasm), indicative of danger to ill	malignus, a, um
mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland	mastopathia, ae f
medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs, therapist (therapist)	therapeutista, ae m
monopathophobia, fear of a particular disease	monopathophobia, ae f
monostotic, pertaining to a singular bone	monostotīcus, a, um
myopia, short sight	myopia, ae f
narcosis	narcōsis, is f
nephrogenic, produced by or originating in the kidney	nephrogēnus, a um
nephropathy, disease of the kidney	nephropathia, ae f
occlusion, the contact between upper and lower teeth on the closure of the jaws or during normal movement of the mandible	occlusio, ōnis f
ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of ocular muscles	ophthalmoplegia, ae f
osteocondrosis, a degenerative change in bony and cartilage tissues	osteocondrōsis, is f

osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition	osteodystrophia, ae f
paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia	diplegia, ae f
a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is affected, monoplegia	monoplegia, ae f
pharmacophobia, a morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines	pharmacophobia, ae f
phoniatics (= phoniatriy), the treatment of disorders of speech	phoniatria, ae f
phlebography 1) a radiographic visualization of veins 2) the tracing of the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph	phlebographia, ae f
phonocardiogram, the record produced by an instrument for recording heart sounds	phonocardiogramma, ātis n
photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light	photophobia, ae f
proctospasm, a spasmodic contraction of the rectum	proctospasmus, i m
progressive	progressīvus, a, um
prophylaxis, the art of preventing disease	prophylaxis, is f
protrusive, removed ahead	protrusīvus, a, um
the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue, enanthema	enanthēma, ātis n
rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose	rhinopathia, ae f
salivary	salivarius, a, um
tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating	tachyphagia, ae f
tissue	textus, us m
toxicosis, a pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons	toxicōsis, is f
tumor	tumor, ōris m
unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma	cancerophobia, ae f
valve	valva, ae f
viral	virālis, e
xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland	xerostomia, ae f
the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart, angiocardiology	angiocardiology, ae f

LESSON 15

NAMES OF QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE ABNORMALITIES IN MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURES AND PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES

Increase and decrease of different quantitative conditions may, as a rule, be expressed by means of the prefixes **hyper-** and **hypo-** which are joined by final root elements:

hyperaesthesia, ae f — excessive sensitiveness of the skin, hyperaesthesia;
hyperkinesia, ae f — a condition in which there is abnormally great strength of movement, hyperkinesia (hyperkinesis);

hyperplasia, ae f — any condition in which there is an increase in the number of cells in any body's part, hyperplasia;

hypodynamia, ae f — diminished muscular or nervous energy, hypodynamia;

hypogalactia, ae f — the secretion of a too small quantity of milk, hypogalactia;

hypopepsia, ae f — abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia.

Increase and decrease in the functional activity is sometimes expressed by means of the initial roots **tachy-** and **brady-**:

tachypnoë, ës f — abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea;

bradykinesia, ae f — abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesia.

Increase in size is expressed by means of the following initial and final roots: **dolich-, macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalialia:**

dolichocōlon, i n — an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon;

macrocytus, i m — a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte;

megaduodēnum, i n — duodenum of abnormally large size, megaduodenum;

megalosplenia, ae f — enlargement of the spleen, megalosplenia;

hepatomegalia, ae f — a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia.

Decrease in size of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the initial roots **brachy-** and **micr-**:

brachydactylia ae f — a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia;

microcephālus, i m — a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus.

Dilatation or narrowing in volume of a hollow organ, cavity or tube is expressed by means of the following roots: **-ectasia, -ectāsis, -dilatatio, sten-, -stenōsis:**

bronchiectāsis, is f — a condition of dilatation of a bronchus or bronchi, bronchiectasis;

gastrectasia, ae f — dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia;

vasodilatatio, ōnis f — dilatation of a blood vessel, vasodilatation;

stenostomia, ae f — abnormal narrowness of the mouth, stenostomy;

oesophagostenōsis, is f — narrowing of the oesophagus, oesophagostenosis.

Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the roots **olig-, poly-, -penia:**

oligodontia (=oligodentia), ae f — a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia;

polyarthropathia, ae f — a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy;

erythropenia, ae f — a state in which there are too few erythrocytes in the blood, erythropenia.

Increase in the quantity of any anatomical or histological structure may also be expressed by the final prefix **-ōsis**:

leucocytōsis, is f — an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis;

papillomatōsis, is f — the condition of diffuse formation of papillomata, papillomatosis.

Greek initial roots and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
aesthes-, -aesthesia	sensus, us m	sensibility, sensitiveness	aesthes-, -aesthesia
brachy-	brevis, e	short	brachy-
cheil-, -cheilia	labium, i n	lip	cheil-, -cheilia
cyt-, -cȳtus	cellūla, ae f	cell	cyt-, -cyte
dolich-	longus, a, um	long	dolich-
erythr-	ruber, bra, brum	red	erythr-
gen-, -genia	mandibūla, ae f	mandible	gen-, -genia
glyc-	dulcis, e	sugar	glyc-
gnath-, -gnathia	maxilla, ae f	maxilla, upper jaw	gnath-, -gnathia
leuc-	albus, a, um	white	leuc-
macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalialia	magnus, a, um	large	macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalialia, -megaly
melan-	niger, gra, grum	black	melan-
micr-	parvus, a, um	small	micr-
myel-, -myelia	1) medulla ossium 2) medulla spinālis	1) bone marrow 2) spinal cord	myel-, -myelia
olig-	parvus, a, um	few	olig-
pod-, -podia	pes, pedis m	foot	pod-, -podia
poly-	multus, a, um	many	poly-
splen-, -splenia	lien, ēnis m	spleen	splen-, -splenia
therm-, -thermia	1) calor, ōris m 2) temperatūra, ae f	1) heat 2) temperature	therm-, -thermia
thyr(e)-	glandūla thyr(e)oidea	thyroid (gland)	thyr-

Attention!

1. The initial roots **macr-** and **megal-** may be used in many (but not in all!) cases as synonyms: macrocephalia = megalcephalia, macropodia = megalopodia.

When choosing the necessary variant of the initial root one should consult the dictionary.

2. The root **-cyt-** can be omitted if the term begins with **erythrocyt-** or **leucocyt-** and ends with **-penia**:

erythrocytopenia = erythropenia; leucocytopenia = leucopenia, but: monocytopenia, thrombocytopenia — the only variants.

Final root elements	English meaning
-aemia	any condition of the blood
-ectasia, -ectāsis, -dilatatio	dilatation
-genēsis	the origin and (formative) development
-mnesia	any condition of the memory
-penia	a diminution in the number of any kind of cells present in the blood
-phrenia	a condition associated with a serious mental disorder
-plasia	the development of tissues
-poēsis	the formation 1) of cells present in the blood 2) of lymph 3) of urine
-sthenia	any condition of strength, vigor or forcefulness
-tensio	a condition of arterial blood pressure
-tonia	a condition of muscular tension in the walls of vessels and bowels

1. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term as well as its English equivalent:

amnesia; anaesthesiolōgus; apodia; asthenia; brachycheilia; brachydactylia; dolichocephalia; dysthyreōsis; erythropenia; glossoplegia; glycaemia; hyperaemia; hyperthermia; hypotonia; leucocytōsis; melanoderma; microgenia; micromyelia; odontogenēsis; oligocytaemia; oligodontia (=oligodentia); oligophrenia; polymastia; prognathia; splenomegalia; thermotherapia; thrombocytopoēsis; thyreotoxicōsis.

2. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal narrowness of the mouth; abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion; abnormal sluggishness of physical movements; a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes; a condition of enlargement of the liver; an abnormally long colon of normal diameter; an increase in the total number of leucocytes; a pathological condition involving many joints; a red blood cell that is larger than normal; a state in which most of the teeth are lacking; a state in which there are too few erythrocytes; dilatation of the stomach; excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body; the origin and development of bone marrow; the origin and development of morbid condition; extremely rapid breathing.

3. Give the full definition and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

aglossia; ana(e)mia; brachyoesophagus; cytology; dolichocolon; dystonia; erythema; gnathalgia; haematomyelia; halitosis; hepatomegalia; hyperaesthesia; hyperglycaemia; hypertension; hypomnesia; hypophrenia; hypoplasia; hypothermia; macrocyte; megaloduodenum; megalomania; melanocarcinoma; microcephaly; microgenia; monocytopenia; myelocytosis; oligodactylia; podagra; podalgia; polyavitaminosis; splenohepatomegaly.

4. Give the Latin dictionary form and translate into English (A) and into Latin (B):

A. Anaesthesia intraorālis; gingivītis ulcerōsa; hypertrophia muscūli masseteris; hypoplasia enamēli; odontogenēsis imperfecta; syndrōmum immunodeficientiae acquisitae; trismus gradus primi.

B. Chemical burn of the face; false diastema; gingival abscess; haemolytic an(a)emia of pregnancy; latent hypermetropia; primary hypothyroidism; progressive facial hemiatrophy; true hyposalivation; viral warts.

I. Latin–English vocabulary

acquisītus, a, um	acquired
actinomycōsis, is f	an infective disease, caused by Actinomyces israeli, actinomycosis
amnesia, ae f	loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia
anaemia, ae f	a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells and haemoglobin, an(a)emia
anaesthesia, ae f	loss of feeling or sensation in some part of the body due to nervous lesion or a local anesthetic agent, anaesthesia
anaesthesiolōgus, i m	medical specialist in the administration of anesthetics, anaesthesiologist
apodia, ae f	congenital absence of feet, apodia
asthenia, ae f	loss of vital forces, asthenia
atrophia, ae f	a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause, atrophy
brachycephālus, i m	an individual with disproportionately short head, brachycephalic
brachydactylia, ae f	a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia
dolichocephalia, ae f	the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia
dysthyreōsis, is f	imperfect function of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis
erythropenia, ae f	a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia
gingivītis, itīdis f	inflammation of the gingival margins around the teeth, manifested by swelling and bleeding, gingivitis
glandūla, ae f	gland
glossoplegia, ae f	paralysis of the tongue, glossoplegia

glycaemia, ae f	a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts, glycaemia
gradus, us m	grade
hyperaemia, ae f	an excess of blood in any part of the body, hyperaemia
hyperthermia, ae f	very high body temperature, hyperthermia
hypertrophia, ae f	an increase in the number or size of the cells of which a tissue is composed as the result of increase in function of that tissue, hypertrophy
hypoplasia, ae f	defective formation or under-development of a tissue or part, hypoplasia
hypotonia, ae f	lessened tension in any body structure, hypotonia
immunodeficientia, ae f	immunodeficiency
imperfectus, a, um	incomplete
intraorālis, e	intraoral
leucocytōsis, is f	an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis
m. massēter, ēris m	masseter (muscle)
melanoderma, ātis n	a condition in which there is an unusually large accumulation of melanin in the skin, melanoderma
microcheilia, ae f	a condition in which the lips are abnormally small, microcheilia
microgenia, ae f	a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size, microgenia
micromyelia, ae f	general reduction in size of the spinal cord, micromyelia
odontogenēsis, is f	the origin and formative development of teeth, odontogenesis
oligocytaemia, ae f	a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency, oligocytaemia
oligodentia, ae f	a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia
(=oligodontia, ae f)	
oligophrenia, ae f	congenital lack of the mentality, oligophrenia
polymastia, ae f	a state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands, polymastia
primus, a, um	first
prognathia, ae f	a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws, prognathism
salivarius, a, um	salivary
splenomegalia, ae f	enlargement of the spleen, splenomegalia
syndrōmum, i n	a distinct group of symptoms or signs which, associated together, form a characteristic clinical picture of a disease, syndrome
thermotherapia, ae f	the use of heat in the treatment of disease, thermotherapia
thrombocytopoēsis, is f	the formation of blood platelets, thrombocytopoiesis

thyreotoxicōsis, is f	any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland, thyrotoxicosis
trismus, i m	inability to open the mouth due to tonic contracture of the muscles of the jaw, trismus
ulcerōsus, a, um	having the characteristics of an ulcer, ulcerous

II. English — Latin vocabulary

abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia	hypopepsia, ae f
abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesia	bradykinesia, ae f
an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon	dolichocōlon, i n
abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea	tachypnoë, ës f
abscess, an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration	abscessus, us m
aglossia, a congenital condition of being devoid of a tongue	aglossia, ae f
an(a)emia, a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood	anaemia, ae f
burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents heaving an effect similar to heat	combustio, ōnis f
brachyoesophagus, a congenitally short oesophagus	brachyoesophāgus, i m
chemical	chemīcus, a, um
a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia	brachydactylia, ae f
a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia	hepatomegalia, ae f
cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells	cytologia, ae f
deviation, an abnormal variant in the development	deviatio, ōnis f
diastema, a pronounced gap between the lateral incisors	diastēma, ātis n
dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia	gastrectasia, ae f
dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of normal diameter	dolichocōlon, i n
dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity	dystonia, ae f
erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia	erythēma, ātis n
excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia	hyperaesthesia, ae f
extremely rapid breathing, tachypnea	tachypnoë, ës f
false	falsus, a, um
gingival	gingivālis, e
gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws	gnathalgia, ae f
halitosis, fetid or offensive breath	halitōsis, is f
haematomyelia, bleeding within the substance of the spinal cord	haematomyelia, ae f

hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or a half of an organ	hemiatrophia, ae f
haemolytic, pertaining to or causing haemolysis	haemolyticus, a, um
hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver	hepatomegalia, ae f
hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body	hyperaesthesia, ae f
hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood	hyperglycaemia, ae f
hypertension, high arterial blood pressure	hypertensio, ōnis f
hypermetropia, a condition in which the image of an object viewed by the eye is formed behind the retina	hypermetropia, ae f
hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory	hypomnesia, ae f
hypophrenia, feebleness of mind	hypophrenia, ae f
hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part	hypoplasia, ae f
hyposalivation, a condition in which there is abnormal decrease in the secretion of saliva	hyposalivatio, ōnis f
hypothermia, deficiency of body heat	hypothermia, ae f
hypothyroidism, a condition caused by underactivity of the thyroid gland	hypothyroidismus, i m (= hypothyreōsis, is f)
an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis	leucocytōsis, is f
latent, existing but not manifest	latens, ntis
macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal	macrocytus, i m
megaloduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size	megaloduodēnum, i n
melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor	melanocarcinōma, ātis n
microcephaly, unusual smallness of the head	microcephalia, ae f
microgenia, a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size	microgenia, ae f
monocytopenia, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow	monocytopenia, is f
myelocytæmia, the presence of myelocytes in the blood	myelocytæmia, ae f
oligodactylia, a congenital deficiency of fingers or toes	oligodactylia, ae f
the origin and development of a morbid condition, pathogenesis	pathogenēsis, is f
the origin and development of the bone marrow, myelogenesis	myelogenesis, is f
a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy	polyarthropathia, ae f
podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid	podāgra, ae f
podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot	podalgia, ae f
polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several vitamins	polyavitaminōsis, is f

pregnancy	graviditas, ātis f
primary	primarius, a, um
a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte	macrocytus, i m
splenohepatomegaly, enlargement of the spleen and the liver	splenohepatomegalia ae f
a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia	oligodontia, ae f
a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia	erythropenia, ae f
true	verus, a, um
wart, a circumscribed, cutaneous excrescence having a papilliferous surface	verruca, ae f

LESSON 16

NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY PROCESSES WHICH OCCUR IN ORGANS AND TISSUES. ONE-WORD NAMES OF ENDOGENOUS PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES AND MALFORMATIONS

The state of inflammation in any organ or tissue, as a rule, is usually expressed by means of the final suffixed element **-ītis** which is transformed into **-itidis** in the Genitive form. The suffix **-ītis** is added to the initial root of the noun which defines the place of a morbid state. All the terms with the suffix **-ītis** are nouns of the 3-rd declension:

arthr- (joint) + **-ītis** → **arthrītis, itidis f** — inflammation of a joint, arthritis;
hepat- (liver) + **-ītis** → **hepatītis, itidis f** — inflammation of the liver, hepatitis.

The suffix **-ītis** may be added both to the Greek and Latin roots:

neph- (Greek *nephros kidney*) + **-ītis** → **nephītis, itidis f** — an inflammatory disease of the kidneys, nephritis;

tonsill- (Latin *tonsilla, ae f tonsil*) + **-ītis** → **tonsillītis, itidis f** — an inflammation of the tonsil, tonsillitis.

The site of the inflammatory process can be defined more precisely by means of the following prefixes of the Greek origin:

1) **endo-** (inner, mostly a mucous part of an organ):

endo- + metr- (*utērus, i m*) + **-ītis** → **endometrītis, itidis f** — an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis.

2) **para-** (cellular, connective and other tissues near an organ):

para- + cyst- (*urinary bladder*) + **-ītis** → **paracystītis, itidis f** — a condition of inflammation affecting the connective and other tissues lying close to the bladder, paracystitis.

3) **peri-** (tissues enclosing an organ):

peri- + card- (*heart*) + **-ītis** → **pericardītis, itidis f** — an inflammation of the membrane enveloping the heart, pericarditis.

Names of some inflammatory morbid conditions are formed without suffix -itis, e. g.:

panaritium, i n — an inflammation in the nail fold, panaris (= panaritium);
phlegmōne, es f — inflammation of connective tissue without pus formation, phlegmon;

pneumonia, ae f — an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung, pneumonia.

Abscesses, cysts and hernias usually belong to pathological cavities.

Abscess (**abscessus, us m**) is an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration. This Latin noun is used mainly with adjectives:

abscessus apicalis — apical abscess, an abscess at the apex of the root of a tooth;

abscessus tonsillāris — tonsillar abscess, a suppurative condition of the parenchyma of a tonsil.

Cyst (**cysta, ae f**) is a cavity lined by a well-defined epithelium, fibrous or degenerating tissue. This noun both in Latin and English is mainly used in two-word terms with adjectives and nouns:

cysta choledōchi — choledochus cyst, cystic dilatation in the common bile duct;

cysta pancreatīca — pancreatic cyst, a cyst arising within or in close proximity to the pancreas.

Hernia (**hernia, ae f**) is the protrusion of an internal organ through a defect in the wall of the anatomical cavity in which it lies. The noun is used like the previous one with adjectives and nouns:

hernia cerēbri — hernia of the brain, protrusion of the brain through a defect in the skull;

hernia inguinālis — inguinal hernia, hernia in the inguinal canal.

In one-word terms, the idea of hernia is expressed by the final root **-cele**:

gastrocēle, es f — hernia of the stomach, gasrocele;

myocēle, es f — hernia of a muscle, myocele.

Names of tumors of a definite organ or tissues are formed by means of final suffix **-ōma** added to the initial root which indicates the localization of abnormal growth. All these names are nouns of the 3-rd declension:

angiōma, ātis n — angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels;

nephrōma, ātis n — nephroma, a tumor derived from renal substance;

osteōma, ātis n — osteoma, a tumor of bone.

Some names of innocent tumors are formed without the suffix -oma:

polypus, i m — polypus, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface;

verrūca, ae f — a wart, a small circumscribed epidermal tumor.

Both nouns are used in multiword terms:

polypus laryngis — a polypus of larynx;

verrūca plana — a plane wart.

A malignant tumor or any malignant growth is named cancer — **cancer, cri m**. This name is used with the nouns and adjectives which define localization of the tumor:

cancer cutis — cancer of the skin;

cancer gastris — cancer of the stomach.

A malignant epithelial tumor is called carcinoma — **carcinōma, ātis n**. This noun is used with adjectives mostly:

carcinōma bronchogenīcum — a bronchogenic carcinoma, carcinoma originating from a bronchus;

carcinōma cutaneum — carcinoma cutaneum, a squamous-celled carcinoma of the skin.

The name *carcinoma* can also be used as a final root of one-word terms:

adenocarcinōma, ātis n — a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma;

chondrocarcinōma, ātis n — a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondrocarcinoma.

A concrement is a pathological concretion — mostly a small mass which has become calcified in a cavity or in the tissue of a hollow anatomical structure. Such a concretion is denoted in Latin by the nouns **concrementum, i n** or **calcūlus, i m** and an adjective defining the localization of the concretion:

concrementum nasāle — nasal calculus;

calcūlus dentālis — dental calculus.

The names of these concretions may also be expressed by one-word terms by means of the final root **-lithus** (Greek *lithos stone*) added to initial roots:

rhinolīthus, i m = concrementum nasāle;

odontolīthus, i m = calcūlus dentālis.

The condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body is called calculus — **calculōsis, is f**. The formation of concretions is named lithiasis — **lithiāsis, is f**. The same word is used as a final root of several one-word terms:

broncholithiāsis, is f — a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis;

cholecystolithiāsis, is f — a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct, cholelithiasis;

nephrolithāsis, is f — a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis;

urolithiāsis, is f — a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis.

Greek initial roots and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
aden-	1) glandūla, ae f 2) adenoīdes, um f 3) nodus lymphaticus	1) gland 2) adenoids 3) lymphatic node	aden-
carcin-, -carcinōma	cancer, cri m	cancer	carcin-, -carcinoma
chole-	bilis, is f; fel, fellis n	bile	chole-
cholecyst-	vesīca biliāris (fellea)	gall bladder	cholecyst-
col-, -colon	1) intestīnum crassum 2) colon	1) large intestine 2) colon	col-, -colon
cyst-	1) saccus, i m 2) vesīca, ae f 3) vesīca urinaria	1) sac 2) bladder 3) urinary bladder	cyst-
dacry-	lacrīma, ae f	tear	dacry-
dacryocyst-	saccus lacrimālis	lacrimal sac	dacryocyst-
enter-	1) intestīnum tenue 2) intestīnum	1) small intestine 2) intestine	enter-
hist-	textus, us m	tissue	hist-
hyster-, metr-	utērus, i m	uterus	hyster-, metr-
lith-, -lithus	calcūlus, i m concrementum, i n	stone concretion	lith-, -lithus
lip-	adeps, ĩpis m	fatty tissue of the body	lip-
necr-, -necrōsis	mortuus, a, um	dead, lifeless	necr-, -necrosis
ne(o)-	novus, a, um	new	ne(o)-
onc-	tumor, ōris m	tumor, swelling	onc-
pan-, pant-	omnis, e	all	pan-, pant-
py-	pus, puris n	pus	py-
scler-, -sclerōsis	durus, a, um	hard, hardening	scler-, -sclerosis
sial-, -sialia	1) salīva, ae f 2) ductus salivarii	1) saliva 2) salivary ducts	sial-, -sialia
sten-, -stenōsis	strictus, a, um	narrow, narrowing	sten-, -stenosis
ur-	1) urea, ae f 2) urīna, ae f	1) urea, the chief nitrogenous constituent of urine 2) urine	ur-
uran-, palat- (lat.)	palātum, i n	palate	uran-, palat-

Final root elements	English meaning
-cele	hernia
-lithiāsis	the formation of concretions
-rrhagia	haemorrhage (bleeding) in any part of the body
-rrhoea	profuse discharge of mucus or other fluid substance

-salivatio	secretion of saliva
-schĭsis	congenial fissure of a tissue
-stāsis	cessation of the flow of any physiological fluid
-uria	any condition of the urine

Attention! Instead of the initial Greek root **uran-** the Latin root **palat-** can be used:

palatoplegia, ae f (palatoplegia, paralysis affecting the soft palate) = uranoplegia, ae f (uranoplegia)

palatoschĭsis, is f (palatoschisis, cleft palate, a congenial fissure in the mid-line of the hard palate) = uranoschĭsis, is f (uranoschisis)

1. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

adenalgia; adenocarcinōma; broncholithiāsis; carcinomatōsis; cheilocarcinoma; cheilognathoschĭsis; cholecystĭtis; dacryostenōsis; empyēma; endophthalmĭtis; enterocolĭtis; gastrocēle; gnathoschĭsis; histolŷsis; hyposalivatio; lipuria; lymphostāsis; megalodontia; myocēle; neoplasma; nephrolithiāsis; odontolĭthus; oncolōgus; osteonecrōsis; palatoplegia; periodontĭtis; panalgia; pyogēnus; uraemia; uranoschĭsis.

2. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel; calculus on the teeth; causing the growth of tumors; the discharge of mucus, pus or blood from eye; a discharge of pus; hardening of bony spaces; formation and development of body tissue; the formation of concretions; inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus; inflammation of the liver; narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland; paralysis affecting the soft palate; profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose; the presence of blood in the urine; the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system.

3. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term in English:

angioma; calculosis; cancerogenic (= carcinogenic); carcinoma; cheilognathopalatoschisis (=cheilognathouranoschisis); cystitis; dacryorrhoea; dropsy; endometritis; enterogastritis; gingivitis; gnathoschisis; hypersalivation; lymphangitis; oncologist; oncotherapy; parotitis; pericystitis; polyposis; sialolith; tonsillitis.

4. Give the Latin dictionary form and translate into English (A) and into Latin (B):

A. Labium leporĭnum sive fissum; rhagādes labii inferiōris; calcŭlus supragingivālis; cancer tunĭcae mucōsae oris; polypōsis laryngis; verrūcae planae; status textuum praecancerōsus; phlegmōne cavitātis oris.

B. Simple odontome; arthritis of temporomandibular joint; nasolabial cyst; submandibular adenitis; abscess of hard palate; implantation of inferior canine tooth; verrucose precancer; aphthous recurrent stomatitis.

I. Latin–English vocabulary

achlorhydria, ae f	a complete lack of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice, achlorhydria
adenalgia, ae f	a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia
adenocarcinōma, ātis n	a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma
amenorrhoea, ae f	the pathological absence or stoppage of the menstrual discharge from the uterus, amenorrhoea
broncholithiāsis, is f	a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis
cancer, cri m	cancer
carcinomatōsis, is f	the condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body, carcinomatosis
calcūlus, i m	a solid pathological concretion, usually of inorganic mater, formed in any part of the body, calculus
cheilocarcinōma, ātis n	carcinoma of the lip, cheilocarcinoma
cheilognathoschīsis, is f	hare-lip in which the cleft involves the jaw as well the lip, cheilognathoschisis
cholecystītis, itīdis f	inflammation of the gall bladder, cholecystitis
dacryostenōsis, is f	narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis
empyēma, ātis n	an accumulation of pus in a cavity, empyema
endophthalmītis, itīdis f	a suppurative inflammation of the interior of the eyeball, endophthalmitis
enterocolītis, itīdis f	an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon, enterocolitis
fissus, a, um (labium)	splintered (lip), hare-lip
gastrocēle, es f	hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouched, gastrocele
gnathoschīsis, is f	a congenital fissure of the maxilla, such as is present in cleft palate, gnathoschisis
hidradenītis, itīdis f	inflammation of the sweat glands, hidradenitis
histolýsis, is f	spontaneous breaking-down or dissolution of living organic tissue, histolysis
hyposalivatio, ōnis f	a condition in which there is an abnormal decrease in secretion of saliva, hyposalivation
leporīnus, a, um	belonging to the hare (lip)
lipuria, ae f	the presence of an oily emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria
lymphostāsis, is f	cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis

megalodontia, ae f	a condition in which the teeth are excessively large, megalodontia
mucōsus, a, um	mucous
myocēle, es f	herniation of a muscle, myocele
neoplasma, ātis n	any new and morbid formation of tissue, neoplasm
nephrolithiāsis, is f	a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis
odontolīthus, i m	calculus on the teeth, odontolith
oncolōgus, i m	medical specialist, treating tumorous diseases, oncologist
osteonecrōsis, is f	death of bony tissue, osteonecrosis
palatoplegia, ae f	paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia
pantalgia, ae f	pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia
periodontītis, itīdis f	inflammation of the periodontal membrane, periodontitis
phlegmōne, es f	inflammation of the tissue without pus formation, phlegmon
planus, a, um	plane
polypōsis, is f	condition in which there are many polypi growing from the mucous membrane, polyposis
praecancerōsus, a, um	relating or belonging to the stage in which a precancer develops, before the growth has become malignant, precancerous
pyogēnus, a, um	forming or producing pus, pyogenic
rhagas, ādis f (plur. rhagādes, um f)	fissures, chaps, or cracks at the angle of the mouth, rhagades
sive	or
status, us m	state
supragingivālis, e	supragingival
textus, us m	tissue
tunīca, ae f	1) layer, coat 2) membrane
uraemia, ae f	a condition caused by retention of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of the latter, uraemia
uranoschīsis, is f	
(=palatoschīsis, is f)	cleft palate
verrūca, ae f	wart

II. English–Latin vocabulary

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel,	
angiostenosis	angiostenōsis, is f
angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels	angiōma, ātis n
aphthous	aphthōsus, a, um
arthritis, inflammation of a joint	arthrītis, itīdis f
calculosis, a condition in which a number of calculi are	

present in any part of the body	calculōsis, is f
calculus on the teeth, odontolith	odontolīhus, i m
cancerogenic (= carcinogenic), producing carcinoma	cancerogēnus, a, um
carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor	carcinōma, ātis n
causing the growth of tumors, oncogenous	oncogēnus, a, um
cheilognathopalatoschisis (=cheilognathouranoschisis), the condition of having both hare-lip and cleft palate	cheilognathopalatoschīsis, is f (=cheilognathouranoschīsis, is f)
cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder	cystītis, itīdis f
dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of the tears	dacryorrhoea, ae f
the discharge of mucus, pus or blood from eye,	
ophthalmorrhoea	ophthalmorrhoea, ae f
a discharge of pus, pyorrhoea	pyorrhoea, ae f
dropsy, an abnormal collection of fluid in tissue or cavity space	hydrops, ōpis m
enterogastritis, an inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach	enterogastrītis, itīdis f
formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis	histogenēsis, is f
gingivitis, inflammation of the gingival margins around the teeth	gingivītis, itīdis f
gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla such as is present in cleft palate	gnathoschīsis, is f
hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis	osteosclerōsis, is f
hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva	hypersalivatio, ōnis f
inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uter- us, endometritis	endometrītis, itīdis f
inflammation of the liver, hepatitis	hepatītis, itīdis f
lymphangitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels	lymphangītis, itīdis f
lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes	lymphocytōsis, is f
narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis	dacryostenōsis, is f
oncologist, medical specialist treating tumorous diseases	oncolōgus, i m
oncotherapy, the treatment of tumorous diseases	oncotherapia, ae f
paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia	palatoplegia, ae f
parotitis, an inflammatory state of the parotid gland	parotītis, itīdis f
recurrent	recurrens, ntis
the presence of blood in the urine, haematuria	haematuria, ae f
profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinor- rhoea	rhinorrhoea, ae f
the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithia- sis	urolithiāsis, is f
sialolith, a salivary calculus	sialolithus, i m

a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by emboli, thromboembolia (thromboembolism)

thromboëmbolia, ae f
(thromboëmbolismus, i m)
tonsillītis, itīdis f

tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsill

1. Give Greek initial roots and Latin equivalents (in the dictionary form) with the following meanings:

1) blood 2) cell 3) black 4) kidney 5) tissue 6) brain 7) light 8) ear 9) child 10) mouth

2. Compose one-word terms in the dictionary form with the following meaning:

1) medical specialist treating tumorous diseases 2) any new and morbid formation of tissue 3) forming or producing pus 4) a red blood cell that is larger than normal 5) a state in which most of the teeth are lacking

3. Write down in the dictionary form the Latin equivalents of the following terms and give the full definition of each term:

1) erythema 2) iatrogenic 3) macrocyte 4) phthisiologist 5) stomatitis

4. Write down the dictionary form and translate into Latin:

1) arthritis of temporomandibular joint 2) comatose state 3) denudation of the tooth cervix 4) viral and bacterial infections 5) rupture of nasal septum

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

abscessus, us m an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration, abscess
actinomycōsis, is f an infective disease, caused by *Actinomyces israeli*, actinomycosis
acquisītus, a, um acquired
acūtus, a, um acute
adenalgia, ae f a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia
adenocarcinōma, ātis n
a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma
aliēnus, a, um foreign
allergīcus, a, um allergic
alopecia, ae f loss of hair, alopecia
amnesia, ae f loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia
anaemia, ae f a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells and haemoglobin, an(a)emia
anaesthesia, ae f loss of feeling or sensation in some part of the body due to nervous lesion or a local anesthetic agent, anaesthesia
anaesthesiolōgus, i m medical specialist in the administration of anesthetics, anaesthesiologist
angiopathia, ae f any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy
anthropogēnus, a, um caused by human activities, anthropogenic
anthropologia, ae f science studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropology
anthropolōgus, i m specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropologist
apodia, ae f congenital absence of feet, apodia
arteria, ae f artery

asthenia, ae f loss of vital forces, asthenia
atrophia, ae f a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause, atrophy
autohaemotherapia, ae f a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherapy

B

bacteriālis, e bacterial, originating or derived from, belonging to or consisting of bacteria
benignus, a, um benign
biologia, ae f biology, science studying forms of life and living organisms
blepharītis, itīdis f inflammation of the eyelids, blepharitis
blepharoplastīca, ae f a plastic operation to restore an eyelid, blepharoplasty
brachydactylia, ae f a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia
bradyphagia, ae f slowing of swallowing, bradyphagia
bradypnoë, ës f an abnormally slow rate of breathing, bradypnoea
broncholithiāsis, is f the condition in which calculi occur in the lumen of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis
bucca, ae f cheek

C

cadāver, ěris n a corpse; a lifeless human body
calcūlus, i m a solid pathological concretion, usually of inorganic matter, formed in any part of the body, calculus
cancer, cri m cancer
carcinōma, ātis n a malignant epithelial tumor, carcinoma
carcinomatōsis, is f the condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body, carcinomatosis
cardiogēnus, a, um cardiogenic, arising because of the heart
cardiolōgus, i m medical specialist treating heart diseases, cardiologist

caries, ēi f a gradual decay of death of bone as a result of chronic infection, caries
cariōsus, a, um affected with caries, carious
cerēbrum, i n cerebrum
cervix, īcis f cervix
cholecystītis, itīdis f inflammation of the gall bladder, cholecystitis
cheilocarcinōma, ātis n carcinoma of the lip, cheilocarcinoma
cheilognathoschīsis, is f hare-lip in which the cleft involves the jaw as well as the lip, cheilognathoschisis
cholecystītis, itīdis f inflammation of the gall bladder, cholecystitis
chondrophia, ae f any disease affecting a cartilage, chondrophia
chronīcus, a, um long continued, chronic
combustio, ōnis f an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat, burn, combustion
commotio, ōnis f a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure
congelatio, ōnis f congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing
congenītus, a, um congenital
continuus, a, um continued
cor, cordis n heart
cornea, ae f cornea
corpus, ōris n body
craniometria, ae f measurement of the skull, craniometry
cryotherapia, ae f the science of the use of cold as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy
cuneiformis, e cuneiform
curatio, ōnis f medical treatment
cysta, ae f a cavity lined by an inflamed or neoplastic tissue, cyst
cystorrhagia, ae f haemorrhage from the urinary bladder, cystorrhagia

D

dacryostenōsis, is f narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis
dactylospasmus, i m spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe, dactylospasm
defectus, us m a defect
deformans, ntis deforming
dentālis, e dental
dentinogenēsis, is f the formation and development of the dentine by the odontoblasts, dentinogenesis
dermatomycōsis, is f a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi, dermatomycosis
dermatōsis, is f any disease of the skin, dermatosis
dexter, tra, trum right
diabētes, ae m anyone of a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism, diabetes
diabetīcus, a, um diabetic, relating to diabetes
diagnōsis, is f medical denotation of the disease from which a person suffers, diagnosis
digītus, i m finger, toe
dolichocephalia, ae f the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia
duodēnum, i n duodenum
dysgeusia, ae f impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia
dysplasia, ae f abnormal development of tissue, dysplasia
dysthyreōsis, is f imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis

E

embryologia, ae f the branch of biological science which is concerned with the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of extrauterine life, embryology
empyēma, ātis n a collection of pus in a cavity, empyema

encephalogramma, ātis n any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain, encephalogram

endophthalmītis, itīdis f a suppurative inflammation of the interior of eyeball, endophthalmitis

enterocolītis, itīdis f an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon, enterocolitis

erosio, ōnis f any superficial destructive process, erosion

erythropenia, ae f a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia

exacerbacio, ōnis f increase in severity of a disease, exacerbation

extractio, ōnis f the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body, extraction

F

faciālis, e facial

facies, ēi f face

febris, is f fever

fissus, a, um splintered (lip)

fistūla, ae f an unnatural communication between an organ and the body surface, fistula

f(o)etor, ōris m a foul odour or stench, fetor

fractūra, ae f fracture

G

gaster, tris f stomach

gastrocēle, es f hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouched, gastrocele

gastrospasmus, i m an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle, gastrospasm

gastrostōma, ātis n natural or artificial gastric fistula, gastrostoma

gingivālis, e gingival

gingivītis, itīdis f inflammation of the gingival margins around the teeth, manifested by swelling and bleeding, gingivitis

glandūla, ae f gland

glossoplegia, ae f paralysis of the tongue, glossoplegia

glycaemia, ae f a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts, glycaemia

gnathoschīsis, is f a congenital fissure of the maxilla, such as is present in cleft palate, gnathoschisis

gradus, us m grade

granulōma, ātis n a tumour composed of granulation tissue, granuloma

gravīda, ae f a woman who is pregnant, gravida

gynaecolōgus, i m medical specialist treating genital diseases in women, gynecologist

H

haemarthrōsis, is f extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis

haematologia, ae f branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases, haematology

halitōsis, is f fetid or offensive breath, halitosis

hemicrania, ae f a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches, hemicrania

hemiplegia, ae f paralysis of one half of the body, hemiplegia

hepar, ātis n liver

herpes, ētis m inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles, herpes

hidradenītis, itīdis f inflammation of the sweat glands, hidradenitis

histolýsis, is f spontaneous dissolution of living organic tissue, histolysis

hyperaemia, ae f an excess of blood in any part of the body, hyperaemia

hyperthermia, ae f very high body temperature, hyperthermia

hypertrophia, ae f an increase in the number or size of the cells of which a tissue is composed as the result of increase in function of that tissue, hypertrophy

hypoplasia, ae f defective formation or underdevelopment of a tissue or part, hypoplasia

hyposalivatio, ōnis f a condition in which there is abnormal decrease in the secretion of saliva, hyposalivation

hypotonia, ae f lessened tension in any body structure, hypotonia

I

iatrogēnus, a, um happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks, iatrogenic

immunodeficientia, ae f immunodeficiency

imperfectus, a, um incomplete

icisīvus, a, um (dens) incisor (tooth)

indigestio, ōnis f any disturbance of the normal process of digestion, indigestion

infarctus, us m a wedge-shaped area of dead tissue, with or without haemorrhage, produced by the obstruction of an end artery, infarct, infarction

infectio, ōnis f the invasion of a pathogenic organism into the body and its subsequent multiplication, infection

inflammatio, ōnis f inflammation

insufficiētia, ae f the state of being inadequate to perform normal function, insufficiency

intraorālis, e intraoral

K

keratotomia, ae f making an incision into the cornea, keratotomy

L

labiālis, e labial

larynx, yngis m larynx

latens, ntis hidden

leporīnus, a, um belonging to the hare

leucocytōsis, is f an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis

ligamentum, i n ligament

lingua, ae f tongue

lipuria, ae f the presence of an oily emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria

lumbālis, e lumbal

luxatio, ōnis f dislocation, luxation

lymphostāsis, is f cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis

M

maculōsus, a, um maculate, marked by maculae

mandibūla, ae f mandible

massēter, ēris m masseter (muscle)

megacōlon, i n a condition in which there is great dilatation of the large intestine, megacolon

megalodontia, ae f a condition in which the teeth are excessively large, megalodontia

melanoderma, ātis n a condition in which there is an unusually large accumulation of melanin in the skin, melanoderma

mellītus, a, um (diabētes) mellitus (diabetes), characterized by a high-fasting blood sugar

metamorphōsis, is f change of form or structure, metamorphosis

microcheilia, ae f a condition in which the lips are abnormally small, microcheilia

microgenia, ae f a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size, microgenia

micromyelia, ae f general reduction in size of the spinal cord, micromyelia

mobilitas, ātis f mobility

monodactylismus, i m a congenital condition in which one finger or toe only is present on the hand or the foot, monodactylism

morbus, i m disease

mucōsus, a, um mucous

myelitis, itīdis f inflammation of bone marrow, myelitis

myocēle, es f hernia of a muscle, myocele

myoplegia, ae f paralysis of muscle or a condition in which is decreased muscular force, myoplegia

myotomia, ae f the dissection of a muscle or of muscle tissue, myotomy

N

neoplasma, ātis n any new and morbid formation of tissue, neoplasm

nephrolithiāsis, is f a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis

nervus, i m nerve
neuralgia, ae f a painful affection of the nerves, due to functional disturbances or to neuritis, neuralgia
neurītis, itīdis f inflammation of a nerve, neuritis
neuropatholōgus, i m medical specialist treating diseases of nervous system, neuropathologist

O

occipitālis, e occipital
ocūlus, i m eye
odontolīthus, i m calculus on the teeth, odontolith
odontogenēsis, is f the origin and formative development of teeth, odontogenesis
odontogēnus, a, um relating to the development of the teeth, odontogenic
odontogramma, ātis n X-ray film of the tooth, odontogram
odontolīthus, i m calculus on the teeth, odontolith
odontoscopia, ae f instrumental-visual examination of the tooth, odontoscopy
oligocytaemia, ae f a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency, oligocytaemia
oligodentia, ae f (= oligodontia, ae f) a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodentia (oligodontia)
oligophrenia, ae f congenital lack of the mentality, oligophrenia
oncolōgus, i m medical specialist treating tumorous diseases, oncologist
ophthalmoscopia, ae f instrumental-visual examination of the eye, ophthalmoscopy
os, oris n mouth
osteōma, ātis n an innocent tumor of bone, osteoma
osteonecrōsis, is f death of bony tissue, osteonecrosis
osteopathia, ae f disease of bones, osteopathia

osteoporōsis, is f rarefaction of bone, osteoporosis
otorhinolaryngologia, ae f branch of medicine for treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx, otorhinolaryngology

P

palatoplegia, ae f paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia
pantalgia, ae f (=panalgia, ae f) pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia
parodontōsis, is f (=periodontōsis, is f) any degenerative change occurring in alveolar periosteum, parodontosis
periodontītis, itīdis f inflammation of the periodontal membrane, periodontitis
pes, pedis m leg
phlebocarcinōma, ātis n a malignant epithelial tumor affecting a vein, phlebocarcinoma
phlegmōne, es f inflammation of connective tissue without pus formation, phlegmon
photophobia, ae f abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia
phthisiāter, tri m medical specialist treating tuberculosis, phthisiotherapist
physiologia, ae f science studying normal vital processes in human body, physiology
phytotherapia, ae f method of treatment by means of medicinal plants, phytotherapy
planus, a, um plane
plicātus, a, um folded, plicate
polymastia, ae f the state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands, polymastia
polypōsis, is f a condition in which there are many polypi growing from the mucous membrane, polyposis
polypus, i m a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface, polyp
polyuria, ae f increase in the amount of the excreted urine, polyuria

praecancerōsus, a, um relating or belonging to the stage in which a precancer develops, before the growth has become malignant, precancerous
premolaris, e (dens) premolar (tooth)
primus, a, um first
proctolōgus, i m medical specialist treating diseases of rectum, proctologist
profundus, a, um deep
prognathia, ae f a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws, prognathism
prophylaxis, is f the art of preventing disease, prophylaxis
pseudarthrōsis, is f a false joint formed between the fragments of a fractured bone which have failed to unite, pseudarthrosis
psychiatria, ae f branch of medicine treating mental diseases, psychiatry
psychōsis, is f any kind of mental disorder, psychosis
pyogēnus, a, um forming or producing pus, pyogenic

R

radiculāris, e radicular
rectum, i n rectum
renālis, e renal
resectio, ōnis f surgical removal of a part of an anatomical structure, resection
rhagas, ādis f (usually plur. **rhagādes, um f**) fissures, chaps, or cracks at the angle of the mouth, rhagades
rhinogramma, ātis n X-ray film of the nose, rhinogram
ruptūra, ae f the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or another structure, rupture

S

salivarius, a, um salivary
sarcōma, ātis n a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma
sectio, ōnis f the act of cutting, section
senīlis, e senile
simplex, ĩcis simple
situs, us m position, site
sive or
spasmophilia, ae f a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and spasm, spasmophilia
spasmus, i m a sudden, powerful, involuntary contraction of muscle, spasm
splenomegalia, ae f enlargement of the spleen, splenomegalia
spondylītis, itīdis f inflammation of the spine, spondylitis
spongiōsus, a, um spongy (spongioid), full of small holes, like a sponge
stomatomycōsis, is f any morbid condition of the oral cavity caused by a microscopical fungus, stomatomycosis
stomatoscopia, ae f visual-instrumental examination of the oral cavity, stomatoscopy
suppuratīvus, a, um pus-forming, having a tendency toward suppuration, suppurative
supraringivālis, e supraringival
syndrōmum, i n a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease, syndrome

T

tachycardia, ae f a rapid action of the heart, tachycardia
tenorrhaphia, ae f an operation for the suturing of the divided ends of a tendon, tenorrhaphy

tenotomia, ae f the cutting of a tendon, tenotomy

textus, us m tissue

thermotherapia, ae f the use of heat in the treatment of disease, thermotherapia

thromboticus, a, um characterized or caused by thrombosis, thrombotic

thyroideus, a, um thyroid

thyr(e)otoxicosis, is f any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland, thyrotoxicosis

toxicomania, ae f an insane desire for poison, toxicomania

toxicosis, is f the pathological condition caused by the adsorption of poison, toxicosis

transplantatum, i n a piece of tissue to transfer from one site to another, transplant

traumaticus, a, um traumatic

trismus, i m inability to open the mouth due to tonic contracture of the muscles of the jaw, trismus

tuberculosis, is f tuberculosis

tunica, ae f membrane

U

ulcerosus, a, um having the characteristics of an ulcer, ulcerous

ulcus, ěris n a localized necrotic lesion of the skin or a mucous surface, ulcer

unguis, is m nail

uraemia, ae f the condition which is associated with the retention of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of the latter, uraemia

uranoschisis, is f (=palatoschisis, is f) cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate, uranoschisis (palatoschisis)

utĕrus, i m uterus

V

venosus, a, um venous

verruca, ae f wart

verus, a, um true

viscus, ěris n the internal organs of the body which are closely related to the great serous cavities : pleural, pericardial or peritoneal

vitium, i n a defect or a vice, vitium

X

xerophthalmia, ae f a morbid condition of eyes characterized by a shrunken appearance of the conjunctiva, xerophthalmia (=xeroma)

Z

zoster, ěris m zoster

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel, angiostenosis angiostenōsis, is f

abnormal narrowing of the mouth, stenostomy stenostomia, ae f

abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia tachyphagia, ae f

abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea tachypnoë, ës f

abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesia bradykinesia, ae f

abscess, an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration abscessus, us m

acquired acquisītus, a, um

actinomycosis, an infective disease, caused by Actinomyces israeli actinomycōsis, is f

the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body, extraction extractio, ōnis f

acute acūtus, a, um

adiponecrosis, necrosis affecting the fatty tissue of the body adiponecrōsis, is f

aglossia, the congenital condition of being without a tongue aglossia, ae f

alimentary alimentarius, a, um

allergic allergĭcus, a, um

amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage amputatio, ōnis f

an(a)emia, changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood anaemia, ae f

angiology, the science of the blood vessels angiologia, ae f

angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels angiōma, ātis n

anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution anthropolōgus, i m

any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy arthropathia, ae f

any disease of skin, dermatosis dermatōsis, is f

any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia arthralgia, ae f

any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy rhinopathia, ae f

any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy trichopathia, ae f

aortic aortĭcus, a, um

apnoea, the cessation in breathing apnoë, ës f

aphthous apthōsus, a, um

arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint arthralgia, ae f

atrachia, not having hair atrachia, ae f

atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause atrophia, ae f

atypical atypĭcus, a, um

B

bacterial bacteriālis, e

benign benignus, a, um

biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances biopharmaceutĭca, ae f

blepharotomy, incision of an eyelid blepharotomia, ae f

bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate bradycardia, ae f

bradyphagia, slowing of swallowing bradyphagia, ae f

branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases, proctology proctologia, ae f

branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of children, paediatrics paediatrica, ae f

breast mamma, ae f

bronchitis, an inflamed condition of the bronchi bronchĭtis, itĭdis f

burn combustio, ōnis f

C

calculosis, the condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body calculōsis, is f
calculus (plur. calculi), a solid pathological concretion calcŭlus, i m
calculus on the teeth, odontolith odontolithus, i m
cancerogenic (= carcinogenic), producing carcinoma cancerogēnus, a, um
carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor carcinōma, ātis n
a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma adenocarcinōma, ātis n
cardinal cardinālis, e
cardiogram 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical picture of heart action cardiogramma, ātis n
cardiography 1) X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical recording of heart action cardiographia, ae f
causing the growth of tumors, oncogenic oncogēnus, a, um
cephalalgia, pain in the head cephalalgia, ae f
cerebral cerebrālis, e
cervix cervix, īcis f
changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood, an(a)emia anaemia, ae f
cheilognathopalatoschisis (=cheilognathouranoschisis), the condition of having both hare-lip and cleft palate cheilognathopalatoschĭsis, is f (=cheilognathouranoschĭsis, is f)
chemical chemĭcus, a, um
cholecystolithiasis, the condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct cholecystolithiāsĭs, is f
chronic chronĭcus, a, um
a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis psoriāsĭs, is f
closed clausus, a, um

coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient cannot be roused by any ordinary external stimulus coma, ātis n
comatose, affected with coma comatōsus, a, um
composite composĭtus, a, um
a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure commotio, ōnis f
a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis nephrolithiāsĭs, is f
a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia aphagia, ae f
a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia brachydactylia, ae f
a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia hepatomegalia, ae f
cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder cystĭtis, itĭdis f
cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells cytologia, ae f

D

dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of tears dacryorrhoea, ae f
deficiency deficientia, ae f
denudation, the state of being deprived of a protecting layer or covering denudatio, ōnis f
dermatitis, inflammation of the skin dermatĭtis, itĭdis f
devitalized, deprived of life or vitalizing properties devitalisātus, a, um
diabetic, related to diabetes diabeticus, a, um
diastema, a pronounced gap between the lateral incisors diastēma, āis n
dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia gastrectasia, ae f
direct directus, a, um
a discharge of pus, pyorrhoea pyorrhoea, ae f

dropsy, the abnormal accumulation of fluid in tissue or cavity space hydrops, ōpis m

dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue dysplasia, ae f

dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity dystonia, ae f

dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue due to perverted nutrition dystrophia, ae f

E

eczema, a nocontagious inflammatory disease of the skin with much itching and burning eczēma, ātis n

empyema, an accumulation of pus in a cavity, empyēma, ātis n

emphysema, a condition in which the alveoli of the lungs are dilated emphysēma, ātis n

encephalopathy, any morbid condition of the brain encephalopathia, ae f

endogenous, having origin within the organism endogēnus, a, um

endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus endometrītis, itīdis f

enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit enophthalmus, i m

enteritis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestines enterītis, itīdis f

enterogastritis, inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach enterogastrītis, itīdis f

enteromegalia, an unusually large size of the intestine enteromegalia, ae f
the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host, invasion invasio, ōnis f

erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia erythēma, ātis n

excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia hyperaesthesia, ae f

exogenous, belonging to aetiological factors outside the organism exogēnus, a, um

extremely rapid breathing, tachypnoea tachypnoē, ēs f

eye oculus, i m

F

false falsus, a, um

femur femur, ōris n

fever febris, is f

fibroma, an innocent tumor composed chiefly of connective tissue fibrōma, ātis n

fibrous fibrōsus, a, um

formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis histogenēsis, is f

the formation of concretions, lithiasis lithiāsis, is f

fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone fractūra, ae f

frenulum frenūlum, i n

functional functionālis, e

G

gall bladder vesīca fellea (biliāris)

gingival gingivālis, e

gland glandūla, ae f

glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences glaucōma, ātis n

glossitis, inflammation of the tongue glossītis, itīdis f

glossotomy, dissection of the tongue glossotomia, ae f

gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws gnathalgia, ae f

gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla gnathoschīsis, is f

goitre, an enlargement of the thyroid gland struma, ae f

H

haematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases haematologia, ae f

haemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood haemogramma, ātis n
haemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males and transmitted by females haemophilia, ae f
hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or a half of an organ hemiatrophia, ae f
halitosis, fetid or offensive breath halitōsis, is f
hand manus, us f
hard durus, a, um
hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis osteosclerōsis, is f
hepatic hepaticus, a, um
hepatitis, inflammation of the liver hepatītis, itīdis f
hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver hepatomegalia, ae f
hereditary hereditarius, a, um
hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body hyperaesthesia, ae f
hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood hyperglycaemia, ae f
hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva hypersalivatio, ōnis f
hypertension, high arterial blood pressure hypertensio, ōnis f
hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory hypomnesia, ae f
hypophrenia, feebleness of mind hypophrenia, ae f
hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part hypoplasia, ae f
hyposalivation, a condition in which there is abnormal decrease in the secretion of saliva hyposalivatio, ōnis f
hypothermia, deficiency of body heat hypothermia, ae f
hypothyroidism, a condition caused by underactivity of the thyroid gland hypothyroidismus, i m (=hypothyreōsis, is f)

I

iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks iatrogēnus, a, um
immunodeficiency immunodeficientia, ae f
impairment of the voice, dysphonia dysphonia, ae f
implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft implantātum, i n
implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body implantatio, ōnis f
an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis leucocytōsis, is f
infection infectio, ōnis f
inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis endometrītis, itīdis f
inflammation of the liver, hepatitis hepatītis, itīdis f
injury laesio, ōnis f
insufficiency insufficientia, ae f
internal internus, a, um
intravenous intravenōsus, a, um

J

joint articulatio, ōnis f

K

keratomycosis, disease of cornea caused by a fungus keratomycōsis, is f

L

latent, existing but not manifest latens, ntis
left sinister, tra, trum
lingual linguālis, e
lip labium, i n
lung pulmo, ōnis m
luxation, dislocation luxatio, ōnis f
lymphangiitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels lymphangiītis, itīdis f
lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes lymphocytōsis, is f

M

macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal macrocýtus, i m
malignant, indicative of danger to ill (neoplasm) malignus, a, um
mammogram (= mastogram) result of breast X-ray examination, mammo-gramma, ātis n
masticatory masticatorius, a, um
mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland mastopathia, ae f
medical specialist treating
 ~ **blood diseases, haematologist** haematolōgus, i m
 ~ **children's diseases, paediatrician (paediatrist)** paediāter, tri m
 ~ **diseases of inner organs, therapist (therapist)** therapeutista, ae m
 ~ **ear and larynx diseases, otolaryngologist,** otolaryngolōgus, i m
 ~ **mental diseases, psychiatrist** psychiāter, tri m
 ~ **tumorous diseases, oncologist** oncolōgus, i m
 ~ **tuberculosis, phthisiologist** phthisiāter, tri m
megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on megalomania, ae f
melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor melanocarcinōma, ātis n
metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of the body by blood vessels, lymphatics or direct contiguity metastāsis, is f
method of treatment by means of medicinal plants, phytotherapy phytotherapia, ae f
myopia, short sight myopia, ae f

N

narcosis, stupor produced by drugs and tending to insensibility and paralysis narcōsis, is f
narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis dacryostenōsis, is f
nasal nasālis, e
nephrogenic, produced by or originating in a kidney nephrogēnus, a um
nephropathy, disease of the kidney nephropathia, ae f
neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system neurogēnus, a, um

O

occlusion, the contact between upper and lower teeth on the closure of the jaws or during normal movement of the mandible occlusio, ōnis f
odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth odontogēnus, a, um
odontome, a solid or cystic tumour occurring in the jaws which is derived from cells conserved in tooth development odontōma, ātis n
oedema, the presence of excessive amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue spaces of the body oedēma, ātis n
oesophagostenosis, narrowing of the oesophagus oesophagostenōsis, is f
oesophagus oesophāgus, i m
oligodactylia, a congenital deficiency of fingers or toes oligodactylia, ae f
oncologist, medical specialist treating tumorous diseases oncolōgus, i m
oncotherapy, the treatment of tumours oncotherapia, ae f
open apertus, a, um
operation operatio, ōnis f
the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision, adenotomy adenotomia, ae f
ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye ophthalmoscopia, ae f

ophthalmoplegia, pulsy (paralysis) of ocular muscles ophthalmoplegia, ae f
the origin and development of morbid condition, pathogenesis pathogenēsis, is f
the origin, formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis histogenēsis, is f

osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition osteodystrophia, ae f

osteotomy, dissection of a bone osteotomia, ae f

otogenic, happening because of the ear otogēnus, a, um

otorhinolaryngologist, medical specialist treating ear, nose and larynx diseases otorhinolaryngolōgus, i m

P

paediatrician (paediatrist), medical specialist treating children's diseases paediāter, tri m

paralysis, loss of motor strength due to a functional or organic disorder of neural or neuromuscular mechanism paralýsis, is f

paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia palatoplegia, ae f

paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia diplegia, ae f

paranephritis, an inflammatory condition involving the connective tissue adjacent to the kidney paranephritīs, itīdis f

parotitis, an inflammatory state of the parotid gland parotītis, itīdis f

partial partiālis, e

a pathological condition in which one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is only affected, monoplegia monoplegia, ae f

pericystitis, inflammation in which the structures around the urinary bladder are affected pericystītis, itīdis f

a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus microcephālus, i m

pharmacophobia, morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines pharmacophobia, ae f

pharmacotherapy, science studying drugs and their usage pharmacotherapia, ae f

phlebography 1) radiographic visualization of veins 2) the tracing of the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph phlebographia, ae f

phoniatics (= phoniatriy), the treatment of disorders of speech phoniatria, ae f

photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light photophobia, ae f

phthysiologist, medical specialist treating tuberculosis phthysiāter, tri m

phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal plants phytotherapia, ae f

plicated plicātus, a, um

pneumonia, inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung pneumonia, ae f

podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid podāgra, ae f

podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot podalgia, ae f

polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several vitamins polyavitaminōsis, is f

polyposis, a condition in which the colon is studded with polypi growing from the mucous membrane polypōsis, is f

postoperative postoperatīvus, a, um

pregnancy graviditas, ātis f

primary primarius, a, um

proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum proctoscopia, ae f

the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis urolithiāsīs, is f

profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhoea rhinorrhoea, ae f

progressive progressīvus, a, um

prophylaxis, the art of preventing disease prophylaxis, is f

protrusive, removed ahead protrusīvus, a, um

psychiatrist, medical specialist treating mental diseases psychiāter, tri m

psychogenic, developing or originating of mental causes psychogēnus, a, um

psychologist, specialist studying mental activities of a human personality

psycolōgus, i m

pulp pulpa, ae f

pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine pyuria, ae f

R

a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte macrocŷtus, i m

recurrent recurrens, ntis

removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part, amputation amputatio, ōnis f

resection, surgical removal of a part of an anatomical structure resectio, ōnis f

results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, haemogram

haemogramma, ātis n

rhinolith, a concretion in the cavity of the nose rhinolīthus, i m

rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose rhinopathia, ae f

rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose rhinoscopia, ae f

rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or an other structure ruptūra, ae f

right dexter, tra, trum

S

salivary salivarius, a, um

science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacology pharmacologia, ae f

scientist studying normal vital processes in human organism physiolōgus, i m

secondary secundarius, a, um

senile senīlis, e

septum septum, i n

short brevis, e

sialolith, a salivary calculus sialolīthus, i m

simple simplex, ĩcis

specialist studying forms of life and vital organisms, biologist biolōgus, i m

specialist studying the man in process of his evolution, anthropologist

anthropolōgus, i m

spondylopathy, any disease of the vertebrae spondylopathia, ae f

state status, us m

a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodentia oligodentia, ae f

a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia erythrope-
nia, ae f

stenosis, narrowing or stricture of an orifice or of the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ stenōsis, is f

stomach gaster, tris f

stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity stomatologia, ae f

stomatitis, inflammation of the oral cavity stomatītis, itīdis f

subcutaneous subcutaneous, a, um

a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli, thromboembolism thromboēbolismus, i m

superficial superficiālis, e

suppurative, pus-forming suppuratīvus, a, um

symblepharon, adhesion of the eyelid to the eyeball symblephāron, i n

symptom, the consciousness of a disturbance in a bodily function

symptōma, ātis n

syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease syndrōmum, i n

T

tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia tachyphagia, ae f
therapist (therapist), medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs therapeutista, ae m
thromboembolism, a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli thromboembolismus, i m
thrombosis, intravascular coagulation during life producing a thrombus thrombōsis, is f
tissue textus, us m
tomography, body-section radiography tomographia, ae f
tongue lingua, ae f
tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsil tonsillītis, itīdis f
tonsillectomy, surgical excision of a tonsil tonsillectomia, ae f
toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons toxicōsis, is f
transfusion, the introduction of sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions into the blood vessels of the circulatory system transfusio, ōnis f
transplantation, the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing the function transplantatio ōnis f
trauma, injury trauma, ātis n

treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors,
physiotherapy physiotherapia, ae f
true verus, a, um
tuberculosis tuberculōsis, is f
tumor (= tumour) tumor, ōnis m
typhlocele, a hernia involving the caecum typhlocēle, es f

U

ulcer, a localized necrotic lesion of the skin or a mucous surface ulcus, ěris n
ulceration, the process of formation of an ulcer ulceratio, ōnis f
ultrasonic, ultrasound ultrasonarius, a, um

V

valve valva, ae f
viral virālis, e

X

xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland xerostomia, ae f
the X-ray examination of breast, mammography mammographia, ae f
the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart, angiocardiology angiocardigraphia, ae f
the X-ray examination of tooth, odontography odontographia, ae f

W

wart, a circumscribed, cutaneous excrescence having a papilliferous surface verrūca, ae f
wound vulnus, ěris n

MEDICAL PROFESSIONAL EXPRESSIONS

1.	Abactus venter	<i>Artificially induced abortion</i>
2.	Abalienatio mentis	<i>Insanity; mental derangement</i>
3.	Ad aurem (ad aur.)	<i>At the ear</i>
4.	Ad libitum (ad lib.)	<i>At pleasure, freely</i>
5.	Ad usum externum (internum)	<i>To be taken externally (internally); for external (internal) use</i>
6.	Alienatio partis	<i>Gangrene</i>
7.	Alternis diēbus (alt. d.)	<i>Every other day</i>
8.	Alternis horis (a. h.)	<i>Every other hour</i>
9.	Ante meridiem (a. m.)	<i>Morning, before noon</i>
10.	Ante mortem	<i>Before death</i>
11.	Ante partum	<i>Before childbirth</i>
12.	Ante prandium (a. p.)	<i>Before dinner</i>
13.	Auris dextra (a. d.)	<i>Right ear</i>
14.	Auris laevis (sinistra) (a. l., a. s.)	<i>Left ear</i>
15.	Aures utrae	<i>Both ears</i>
16.	Bipāra	<i>A woman who has had born two children at separate births</i>
17.	Bis in die (b. i. d.)	<i>Twice a day</i>
18.	Compos mentis	<i>Of sound mind</i>
19.	Dolōres vagi	<i>Wandering pains</i>
20.	Facies hippocratīca	<i>The appearance of a dying person described by Hippocrates: a pale or livid face with dull sunken eyes, pinched nose, hollow cheeks and temples, openmouth and dropped lower jaw</i>
21.	Habitus aegrōti	<i>The general physical appearance of a diseased person; habit</i>
22.	Horrīda cutis (=cutis anserīna)	<i>Goose flesh</i>
23.	Impotentia coeundi	<i>Sexual impotence in the male</i>
24.	Impotentia erigendi	<i>Sexual impotence due to lack of the power of erection of the penis</i>
25.	Impotentia generandi	<i>Inability to reproduce</i>
26.	In articulo mortis	<i>At the instant of death</i>
27.	In extrēmīs	<i>At the point of death</i>
28.	In situ	<i>1. In the normal, natural or original position 2. In a given place</i>
29.	Inter alia	<i>Among the other</i>
30.	In utero	<i>Within the uterus</i>
31.	In vacuo	<i>In a vacuum</i>

32.	In vitro	<i>Within a glass vessel; applied to changes taking place in the test - tube method of investigation</i>
33.	In vivo	<i>Within the living organism</i>
34.	Intra vitam	<i>During life</i>
35.	Locum tenens	<i>A medical practitioner who acts as deputy for another</i>
36.	Locus minōris resistentiae	<i>The place of least resistance (an organ or tissue most likely to be a particular disease)</i>
37.	Lusus natūrae	<i>A teratism or other freak of nature</i>
38.	Malum aegyptīcum	<i>Diphtheria (literally — Egyptian evil)</i>
39.	Malum arteriārum senīle	<i>Senile arteriosclerosis (literally — senile evil of arteries)</i>
40.	Malum cadūcum	<i>Epilepsy (literally — falling evil)</i>
41.	Malum venereum	<i>Syphilis (literally — venereal evil)</i>
42.	Minīmum audibīle	<i>The auditory threshold; the least sound that can be heard</i>
43.	Minīmum cognoscibīle	<i>The visibility threshold for recognizing shapes</i>
44.	Minīmum sensibīle	<i>The threshold of consciousness</i>
45.	Muscae volitantes	<i>The appearance in the fields of vision of variously shaped figures caused by defect of the vitreous humor (literally — flying flies)</i>
46.	Noli - me - tangēre	<i>An old but colorful name for rodent ulcer (literally — do not touch me)</i>
47.	Non compos mentis	<i>A person who is not sufficiently sound of mind to manage his own affairs</i>
48.	Nostrum	<i>A quack remedy or a medicine the ingredients of which are kept secret</i>
49.	Nullipāra	<i>A woman who has not given birth to a child</i>
50.	Ocūlus dexter (OD, o. d.)	<i>Right eye</i>
51.	Omnībus alternis horis (o. alt. hor.)	<i>Every other hour</i>
52.	Omni mane (o. m.)	<i>Every morning</i>
53.	Omni nocte (o. n.)	<i>Every night</i>
54.	Per rectum (p. r.)	<i>Per rectum (through the rectum)</i>
55.	Post meridiem (p. m.)	<i>Evening or afternoon</i>
56.	Post mortem	<i>After death</i>
57.	Post partum	<i>After childbirth</i>
58.	Post prandium	<i>After dinner</i>
59.	Potentia coēundi	<i>The capacity to have sexual intercourse</i>
60.	Potentia concipiendi	<i>The capacity to conceive</i>
61.	Potentia generandi	<i>The power to beget children</i>
62.	Primigravīda	<i>One who is pregnant for the first time</i>
63.	Primipāra	<i>A woman who has had one child</i>

64.	Prognōsis anceps	<i>An uncertain prognosis</i>
65.	Prognōsis fausta	<i>A good prognosis</i>
66.	Prognōsis infausta	<i>An unfavorable prognosis</i>
67.	Prognōsis quoad vitam	<i>An opinion as to whether the patient will live</i>
68.	Pro ratiōne aetātis (p. r. aet.)	<i>According to age</i>
69.	Pro re nata (p. r. n.)	<i>Occasionally, when required</i>
70.	Pubertas plena	<i>The attainment of full sexual maturity</i>
71.	Pubertas praecox	<i>Puberty occurring at an abnormally early age</i>
72.	Quantum libet (=quantum placet)	<i>As much as you please</i>
73.	Quaqua hora (q. q. h.)	<i>Every hour</i>
74.	Quater in die (q. i. d.)	<i>Four times a day</i>
75.	Secundigravida	<i>A woman who is pregnant for the second time</i>
76.	Secundipara	<i>A woman who has had 2 children, in two different pregnancies</i>
77.	Status asthmaticus	<i>A severe and continuous attack of asthma in which there is marked dyspnoea and finally exhaustion and collaps</i>
78.	Status convulsivus sive epilepticus	<i>Repeated and prolonged epileptic seizures without recovery of consciousness between attacks</i>
79.	Status praesens	<i>The present condition</i>
80.	Ter de die (t. d. d.)	<i>Thrice a day</i>
81.	Unipara	<i>A woman who has given birth once only</i>
82.	Vis conservatrix	<i>The innate strength of an organism enabling it to withstand disease</i>
83.	Vis medicatrix naturae	<i>The natural ability of the organism to prevail over disease without external assistance</i>
84.	Vis vitae (vitalis)	<i>The life force</i>

LATIN PROVERBS AND QUOTATIONS

1.	Aes debitōrem leve, grave inimicum facit	<i>If you want to keep a friend, never borrow, never lend</i>
2.	Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur	<i>A friend in need is a friend indeed</i>
3.	Amor non est medicabilis herbis	<i>No herb will cure love</i>
4.	Amor tussisque non celantur	<i>Love and cough cannot be hidden</i>
5.	Aquila muscas non captat	<i>An eagle doesn't catch the flies</i>
6.	Arte et humanitate, labore et scientia	<i>By art and humanity, by labor and knowledge</i>
7.	Audiatur et altera pars	<i>Let's hear the opposite side!</i>
8.	Aurora Mysis amica	<i>He that will thrive, must rise at five</i>
9.	Bis dat qui cito dat	<i>He gives twice who gives in a trice</i>
10.	Bona valetudo melior est quam maximae divitiae	<i>Good health is above wealth</i>
11.	Cogitationes posteriores saepe sunt meliores	<i>Second thoughts are the best</i>
12.	Cogito ergo sum	<i>I think, therefore I am</i>
13.	Consuetudo est altera natura	<i>Custom is second nature</i>
14.	Copia non est inopia	<i>Store is no sore</i>
15.	Cum promiseras, facias	<i>Promise is a debt</i>
16.	De gustibus non est disputandum	<i>Tastes are not to be argued</i>
17.	De mortuis aut bene aut nihil	<i>Speak nothing but good of the dead</i>
18.	Diabolus non est tam ater, ac pingitur	<i>The devil is not so black as he is painted</i>
19.	Dictum — factum	<i>Said and done</i>
20.	Dies levat lucrum	<i>Time heals most sorrows</i>
21.	Divide et impera	<i>Divide and rule</i>
22.	Domus propria domus optima	<i>My house is my castle (East or west, home is best)</i>
23.	Dum spiro spero	<i>As long as I breathe, I hope</i>
24.	Duos qui lepores sequitur, neutrum capit	<i>If you run after two hares, you will catch neither</i>
25.	Dura lex sed lex	<i>The law is the law and must be obeyed</i>
26.	Experientia est optima magistra (=Usus est optimus magister)	<i>Experience is the best teacher</i>
27.	Ebrietas est voluntaria insania	<i>Drunkenness is nothing but voluntary madness</i>
28.	E cantu dignoscitur avis	<i>A bird may be known by its song</i>
29.	Equi donati dentes non sunt inspiciendi	<i>Don't look a gift horse in the mouth</i>
30.	Errare humanum est	<i>It's human to err</i>

31.	Est avis in dextra melior quam quattuor extra	<i>A bird in the hand is worth one hundred in flight</i>
32.	Facile dictu, difficile factu	<i>Easier said than done</i>
33.	Facta, non verba	<i>Better to do well than to say well</i>
34.	Festina lente	<i>Make haste slowly</i>
35.	Finis coronat opus	<i>All is well that ends well</i>
36.	Fronti nulla fides	<i>Appearances are deceitful</i>
37.	Fortes fortuna adjuvat	<i>Fortune favours the brave</i>
38.	Homines amplius oculis credunt quam auribus	<i>A picture is worth a thousand words</i>
39.	Homo a se ortus	<i>A self-made man</i>
40.	Homo doctus in se divitias habet	<i>The wealth of the mind is the only true wealth</i>
41.	Homo est animal sociale	<i>Man is by nature a political animal</i>
42.	Homo homini lupus est	<i>Man is a wolf to man</i>
43.	Homo proponit, sed Deus disponit	<i>Man proposes but God disposes</i>
44.	Homo sum, humani nihil a me alienum esse puto	<i>I am a man, I count nothing human alien to me</i>
45.	Ignorantia non est argumentum	<i>Lack of knowledge is no excuse (= Ignorance is no argument)</i>
46.	In medio stat virtus	<i>Virtue stands in the middle</i>
47.	Ira furor brevis est	<i>Anger is short madness</i>
48.	Labor et patientia omnia vincunt	<i>Diligence is the mother of success</i>
49.	Mala herba cito crescit	<i>Great weeds grow apace</i>
50.	Manus manum lavat	<i>One hand washes the other</i>
51.	Mare verborum, gutta rerum	<i>Great boast, small roast</i>
52.	Medicus curat, natura sanat	<i>The physician heals, nature convalesces</i>
53.	Mens sana in corpore sano	<i>A healthy mind in a healthy body</i>
54.	Nemo sine vitio est	<i>No one is without a fault</i>
55.	Ne differas in crastinum	<i>Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today</i>
56.	Ne noceas, si juvare non potes	<i>Do no harm, if you can not help</i>
57.	Nomen est omen	<i>The name is the sign</i>
58.	Ne Juppiter quidem omnibus placet	<i>He who pleased everybody died before he was born</i>
59.	Nihil volenti difficile est	<i>Anything is possible if you wish hard enough</i>
60.	Non est fumus absque igne	<i>There is no smoke without fire</i>
61.	Non est via in medicina sine lingua Latina	<i>There is no way in medicine without Latin</i>
62.	Non scholae, sed vitae discimus	<i>We learn not for school but for life</i>
63.	Nulla aetas ad discendum sera	<i>It is never too late to learn</i>
64.	Nulla regula sine exceptione	<i>There is no rule without exception</i>
65.	Nulla dies sine linea	<i>Not a day without a line</i>

66.	Nullum malum sine aliquo bono	<i>No great loss without some small gain</i>
67.	Omnia fluunt, omnia mutantur	<i>Everything flows and everything changes</i>
68.	Omnia mea mecum porto	<i>All I have, I carry with me</i>
69.	O tempora, o mores!	<i>What times! What customs!</i>
70.	Otium post negotium	<i>Work done, have your fun</i>
71.	Pacta sunt servanda	<i>Agreements should be obeyed</i>
72.	Paulatim summa petuntur	<i>Learn to creep before you leap</i>
73.	Per aspera ad astra	<i>Through the thorns (hard-ships) to the stars!</i>
74.	Pigritia est mater vitiōrum	<i>Idleness is the mother of all evil</i>
75.	Plenus venter non studet libenter	<i>A full stomach is deaf to learning</i>
76.	Potius sero quam nunquam	<i>Better is late than never</i>
77.	Primum noli nocere	<i>First, do no harm</i>
78.	Principium dimidium totius	<i>Well begun is half done</i>
79.	Procul ex oculis — procul ex mente	<i>Out of sight, out of mind</i>
80.	Quem Deus perdere vult, dementat prius	<i>Whom God wishes to ruin, he first deprives him of reason</i>
81.	Quidquid latet apparēbit	<i>What is done by night appears by day</i>
82.	Quidquid Latīne dictum sit, altum vidētur	<i>Anything said in Latin sounds profound</i>
83.	Qui non est nobiscum adversus nos est	<i>He that is not with us is against us</i>
84.	Qui quaerit, repērit	<i>He will find who is searching</i>
85.	Qui scribit, bis legit	<i>He who writes reads twice</i>
86.	Qui seminat mala, metet mala	<i>The ill you do will rebound upon you</i>
87.	Qui tacet consentire vidētur	<i>Silence gives consent</i>
88.	Quod erat demonstrandum	<i>Which was to be proved</i>
89.	Quod licet Jovi, non licet bovi	<i>What Jupiter is allowed to do cattle are not</i>
90.	Quot capita, tot sententiae	<i>So many men, so many minds</i>
91.	Radices litterarum amarae, fructus dulces	<i>Whatever is good to know is difficult to learn</i>
92.	Repetitio est mater studiōrum	<i>Repeating is the mother of learning</i>
93.	Saltare ad tibiam alicujus	<i>To dance after somebody's tune</i>
94.	Scientia potentia est	<i>Knowledge is power</i>
95.	Scio me nihil scire	<i>I know that I know nothing</i>
96.	Sero venientibus ossa	<i>There is nothing left for the late-comers</i>
97.	Sine ira et studio	<i>Without ill-will and without favor</i>
98.	Sine labore non erit panis in ore	<i>No pains, no gains</i>
99.	Si vis amari, ama!	<i>To be loved, love!</i>
100.	Suae quisque fortunae faber est	<i>Each man is the maker of his own fortune</i>

101.	Sudōre et sanguīne, opera et studio	<i>By blood, toil, tears and sweat</i>
102.	Suis quaeque temporibus	<i>There is a time and place for everything</i>
103.	Suum cuique	<i>To each his own</i>
104.	Tamdiu discendum est, quamdiu discendum vivis	<i>Live and learn</i>
105.	Tantum possūmus, quantum scimus	<i>We can do as much as we know</i>
106.	Temperantia est custos vitae	<i>Excesses destroy our powers</i>
107.	Tempōra mutantur et nos mutāmur in illis	<i>The times change and we are changing with them</i>
108.	Tempōris filia veritas	<i>Truth is a daughter of time</i>
109.	Totus mundus agit histriōnem	<i>All the world's a stage</i>
110.	Ubi concordia ibi victoria	<i>Where is the unity, there is the victory</i>
111.	Umbram suam timēre	<i>He is afraid of his own shadow</i>
112.	Una hirundo non facit ver	<i>One swallow makes no summer</i>
113.	Ut salūtas, ita salutabēris	<i>As the call, so the echo</i>
114.	Verba docent, exempla trahunt	<i>Words are teaching, examples are pulling</i>
115.	Verum amīcum pecunia non parābis	<i>Money cannot buy friendship</i>
116.	Vincuntur molli pectōra dura prece	<i>A word warmly said gives comfort even to a cat</i>
117.	Vox popūli — vox Dei	<i>The voice of the people is the God's voice</i>

THE INTERNATIONAL STUDENTS' ANTHEM «GAUDEAMUS»

Gaudeāmus igītur,	Let us rejoice therefore
Juvēnes dum sumus!	While we are young!
Post jucundam juventūtem,	After a pleasant youth,
Post molestam senectūtem	After a troubling old age
Nos habēbit humus. (bis)	The earth will have us.
Ubi sunt qui ante nos	Where are they who before us
In mundo fuēre?	Were in the world?
Transeas ad supēros,	You may go up to the gods,
Transeas ad infēros,	You may cross into the underworld,
Hos si vis vidēre. (bis)	If you wish to see them.
Vita nostra brevis est,	Our life is brief,
Brevi finiētur:	It will shortly end:
Venit mors velocīter,	Death comes quickly,
Rapit nos atrocīter,	Snatches us cruelly,
Nemīni parcētur. (bis)	It spares no one.
Vivat Academia!	Long live the academy!
Vivant professōres!	Long live the teachers!
Vivat membrum quodlibet,	Long live each student!
Vivant membra quaelibet,	Long live all students!
Semper sint in flore! (bis)	May they always flourish!
Vivant omnes virgīnes,	Long live all girls,
Gracīles, formōsae!	Slender and beautiful!
Vivant et muliēres,	Long live wives as well,
Tenēre, amabīles,	Tender, loveable,
Bonae, laboriōsae. (bis)	Good and productive.
Vivat et Respublica	Long live the state as well
Et qui illam regunt!	As they who rule it!
Vivat nostra civitas,	Long live our city
Maecenatum caritas,	[And] the charity of benefactors
Qui nos hic protēgunt! (bis)	Who protect us here!
Pereat tristitia,	Let sadness perish,
Pereant dolōres!	Let sorrows perish!
Pereat diabōlus,	Let the devil perish,
Quivis antiburschius	Let [perish] whoever who is anti-student
Atque irrisōres !	As well those who mock us !

The most popular stanzas nowadays are typed in black type

LITERATURE

1. *Англо-русский медицинский словарь* : более 90 000 терминов / сост. : И. Ю. Марковина [и др.]. Москва : Медицинское информационное агентство, 2008. 896 с.
2. *Волмянская, О. А.* Англо-русский словарь для специалистов-медиков / О. А. Волмянская. Минск : Асар, 2000. 304 с.
3. *Капитула, Л. С.* Латинский язык : учебно-методическое пособие / Л. С. Капитула. 2-е изд., испр. Минск : БГМУ, 2017. 282 с.
4. *Нечай, М. Н.* Латинский язык и стоматологическая терминология : учеб. пособие для студ. стом. ф-тов вузов / М. Н. Нечай. Тюмень : Печатник, 2010. 256 с.
5. *Русско-англо-латинский словарь крылатых слов и выражений* / сост. А. С. Альбов. Москва : АСТ; Санкт-Петербург : Сова, 2006. 606, [2] с.
6. *Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык (Lingua Latina) : учебник / А. З. Цисык. Минск : Новое знание, 2017. 456 с.
7. *Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык : учебник / А. З. Цисык. Минск : БГМУ, 2009. 196 с.
8. *Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык = The Latin Language : учеб. пособие / А. З. Цисык ; пер. на англ. яз. А. З. Цисык. Минск : БГМУ, 2010. 212 с.
9. *Arnaudov, G.* Terminologia medica polyglotta. Медицинская терминология на пяти языках / G. Arnaudov. София : Медицина и физкультура, 1979. 943 с.
10. *Butterworths Medical Dictionary*. 2-nd ed. London — Boston — Sydney — Wellington — Durban — Toronto : Butterworth, 1979. 1942 p.
11. *Kondratiev, D.* Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology for Medical Students / Д. К. Кондратьев, О. Е. Вылегжанина, Ю. В. Князева. Гродно : ГрГМУ, 2005. 250 с.
12. *The Latin Language and Medical Terminology Basics* : textbook / L.Yu. Smolska, , revised. Киев : AUS Medicine Publishing, 2017. 400 p.
13. *Stadman's Medical Dictionary*. 25-th ed. Baltimore — Hong Kong — London — Sydney : Williams and Wilkins, 1989. 1751 p.
14. *Terminologia Anatomica* : International Anatomical Terminology. 2-nd ed. Stuttgart ; New York : Georg Thieme Verlag, 2011. 292 p.
Histologica. Международные термины по цитологии и гистологии человека с официальным списком русских эквивалентов / под ред. чл.-корр. РАМН В. В. Банина и проф. В.Л. Быкова. Москва : ГЭОТАР-Медиа, 2009. 272 с.

CONTENTS

Preface.....	3
Introduction into the subject	4
Part I. Phonetic rules of pronunciation	7
Lesson 1. Alphabet in Latin. The pronunciation of vowels, consonants and letter combinations. Accent rules	7
§ 1. Latin alphabet.....	7
§ 2. Division of latin sounds	8
§ 3. Pronunciation of vowels	8
§ 4. Pronunciation of two vowel combinations	8
§ 5. Pronunciation of consonants	9
§ 6. Pronunciation of consonant combinations	10
§ 7. Pronunciation of some letter combinations	10
§ 8. Stressing rules in the words consisting of two syllables.....	11
§ 9. Stressing rules in the polysyllabic words. Length and brevity of the second end syllable	11
§ 10. Long suffixes.....	11
§ 11. Short suffixes.....	12
§ 12. Suffixes with similar quality of vowel in all parts of medical terminology.....	12
§ 13. The way of accent determination when the second end vowel isn't a part of a long or a short suffix.....	12
§ 14. Some rules of syllable length determining.....	13
§ 15. The rules of syllable brevity	13
§ 16. Exercises.....	14
Part II. Anatomical terminology	17
Lesson 2. The structure of Latin anatomical terms. Nouns and their grammar categories	17
§ 17. The Latin terminology in anatomy and its structure.....	17
§ 18. Grammar categories of noun.....	17
§ 19. Dictionary form of nouns	18
§ 20. Description of declensions	19
§ 21. The stem of the noun and the way to determine it.....	20
§ 22. Exercises.....	20
§ 23. Vocabulary to lesson 2	21
Lesson 3. Adjectives and their dictionary form. Adjective and noun agreement .	23
§ 24. Introductory information about adjectives in Latin	23
§ 25. 1 st group of adjectives	23
§ 26. 2 nd group of adjectives	24
§ 27. Adjective and noun agreement.....	25
§ 28. The Comparative degree	26
§ 29. Comparative forms in anatomical terminology	27

§ 30. The Superlative degree.....	27
§ 31. Peculiarities of the use of the comparison degrees of the adjectives magnus, a, um and parvus, a, um in Latin anatomical terminology.....	28
§ 32. Exercises	28
§ 33. Vocabulary to lesson 3	29
Lesson 4. Nominative Plural of nouns and adjectives	31
§ 34. Nominative Plural endings of nouns and adjectives	31
§ 35. Abbreviations of Nominative Plural forms used in anatomical terms	32
§ 36. Exercises	32
§ 37. Vocabulary to lesson 4.....	33
Lesson 5. Genitive Plural of nouns and adjectives.....	34
§ 38. Genitive Plural endings of nouns and adjectives.....	34
§ 39. Exercises	36
§ 40. Vocabulary to lesson 5	36
Lesson 6. The Accusative Singular and Plural of the nouns and adjectives. Prepositions used with the Accusative	37
§ 41. Accusative Singular and Plural endings.....	37
§ 42. Prepositions used with the Accusative	38
§ 43. Prefixes formed from the prepositions used with the Accusative	38
§ 44. Exercises	39
§ 45. Vocabulary to lesson 6	40
Lesson 7. Ablative Singular and Plural of the nouns and adjectives. Prepositions used with the Ablative	41
§ 46. Ablative and its formation.....	41
§ 47. Prepositions with the Ablative.....	42
§ 48. Prefixes formed from the prepositions used with the Ablative	43
§ 49. Exercises	43
§ 50. Vocabulary to lesson 7	43
§ 51. Summary table of declensions and case endings.....	44
§ 52. Model (sample) of the final test in anatomical terminology.....	44
Latin–English vocabulary	Ошибка! Закладка не определена.
English–Latin vocabulary.....	Ошибка! Закладка не определена.
Part III. Pharmaceutical terminology	56
Lesson 8. Introduction to the Latin pharmaceutical terminology	56
§ 53. General information on the Latin pharmaceutical terminology	56
§ 54. The drug form names	57
§ 55. Components of medical plants	58
§ 56. Medicinal plants in the pharmaceutical terms	58
§ 57. The morphological structure of one-word Latin drug names	59
§ 58. Some rules of building multiword pharmaceutical terms	59
§ 59. Exercises	60
§ 60. Vocabulary to lesson 8	60

Lesson 9. Latin in the medical prescription. Standard verb forms indicating order and instructions in making up the Latin part of prescription.	
General rules of making up the Latin part of prescription	61
§ 61. Current use of Latin in medical prescription.....	61
§ 62. The Imperative verb forms used in a simple medical prescription.....	61
§ 63. The Conjunctive forms in medical prescription.....	62
§ 64. The structure of a complex medical prescription.....	63
§ 65. Some peculiarities of quantity expression in the medical prescription	64
§ 66. Some important rules for making up the Latin part of medical prescription	64
§ 67. Morphological roots of plant origin indicating alkaloids and glycosides with different pharmaceutical effects.....	64
§ 68. Exercises.....	65
§ 69. Vocabulary to lesson 9	65
Lesson 10. The use of the Accusative of some pharmaceutical forms in the first line of a medical prescription	66
§ 70. General information on the use of the Accusative of the pharmaceutical forms in a medical prescription	66
§ 71. The prescription of tablets in the Accusative form.....	67
§ 72. The prescription of dragees in the Accusative form.....	68
§ 73. The prescription of ophthalmic films	68
§ 74. The prescription of suppositories in the Accusative case.....	69
§ 75. The prescription of aerosols in the Accusative case	69
§ 76. Morphological roots.....	69
§ 77. Exercises.....	70
§ 78. Vocabulary to lesson 10	71
Lesson 11. Latin names of chemical elements, acids, oxides, hydroxides, peroxides.....	72
§ 79. Latin names of chemical elements.....	72
§ 80. Latin names of acids	73
§ 81. Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides.....	74
§ 82. Morphological roots reflecting chemical information.....	74
§ 83. Exercises.....	75
§ 84. Vocabulary to lesson 11	77
Lesson 12. Latin names of salts on the labels of drug names and in medical prescriptions.....	79
§ 85. Latin names of salts, whose anions contain oxygen	79
§ 86. Latin names of salts whose anions do not contain oxygen	80
§ 87. Anion names of basic salts	80
§ 88. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts	80
§ 89. Morphological roots reflecting pharmaceutical information	81
§ 90. Exercises.....	81
§ 91. Vocabulary to lesson 12	83

§ 92. Model (sample) of the final test in the pharmaceutical terminology	85
Latin–English vocabulary	86
English–Latin vocabulary	88
Part IV. Clinical terminology	91
lesson 13 introduction to the Latin clinical terminology. One-word terms and their morphological structure. Initial and final morphological elements used for word building. Multiword clinical terms. Names of branches of medicine and medical specialists. Names of medical examinations	91
§ 93. General remarks on the Latin clinical terminology	91
§ 94. The morphological structure of one-word clinical terms	91
§ 95. Some notes on the word stressing in clinical names	92
§ 96. Initial and final root elements	93
§ 97. The structure and vocabulary of multiword clinical terms	93
§ 98. The names of the common branches of clinical medicine	94
§ 99. Names of medical specialists	95
§ 100. Some notes on the names of medical specialists in Latin and English	95
§ 101. The names of medical examinations and methods of treatment	96
§ 102. Table of initial root elements	96
§ 103. Table of final root elements	97
§ 104. Exercises	97
§ 105. Vocabulary to lesson 13	98
lesson 14 one-word names of function disorders, pathological processes and abnormal conditions	101
§ 106. Composition of one-word names of functional disorders	101
§ 107. Composition of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions	102
§ 108. Initial Greek roots and their Latin equivalents	104
§ 109. Table of final root elements	104
§ 110. Exercises	105
§ 111. Vocabulary to lesson 14	106
lesson 15 names of qualitative and quantitative abnormalities in morphological structures and physiological processes	109
§ 112. Increase and decrease in different quantitative conditions	109
§ 113. Increase or decrease in dimension of anatomical and histological structures	110
§ 114. Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures	110
§ 115. Table of initial root elements	111
§ 116. Table of final roots	112
§ 117. Exercises	112
§ 118. Vocabulary to lesson 15	113

Lesson 16. Names of inflammatory processes which occur in organs and tissues. One-word names of endogenous pathological changes and malformations	117
§ 119. Names of inflammatory conditions	117
§ 120. Names of pathological cavities	118
§ 121. Names of tumors	118
§ 122. Names of concretions	119
§ 123. Table of initial roots.....	120
§ 124. Table of final roots.....	120
§ 125. Exercises.....	121
§ 126. Vocabulary to lesson 16	122
§ 127. Model (sample) of the final test in clinical terminology	125
Latin–English vocabulary	127
English–Latin vocabulary	133
Medical professional expressions.....	141
Latin proverbs and quotations	144
The international students’ anthem «Gaudeamus»	148
Literature.....	149

Учебное издание

Цисык Андрей Зиновьевич
Кузнецова Елена Леонидовна

ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

Учебно-методическое пособие

На английском языке

Ответственная за выпуск Н. А. Круглик
Переводчик А. З. Цисык
Компьютерный набор З. В. Позняк
Компьютерная верстка А. В. Янушкевич

Подписано в печать 17.10.18. Формат 60×84/16. Бумага писчая «Снегурочка».

Ризография. Гарнитура «Times».

Усл. печ. л. 9,07. Уч.-изд. л. 7,82. Тираж 200 экз. Заказ 709.

Издатель и полиграфическое исполнение: учреждение образования
«Белорусский государственный медицинский университет».

Свидетельство о государственной регистрации издателя, изготовителя,
распространителя печатных изданий № 1/187 от 18.02.2014.

Ул. Ленинградская, 6, 220006, Минск.